

# INFORMATION REPORT INFORMATION REPORT

## CENTRAL INTELLIGENCE AGENCY

This material contains information affecting the National Defense of the United States within the meaning of the Espionage Laws Title 18, U.S.C. Secs. 793 and 794, the transmission or revelation of which in any manner to an unauthorized person is prohibited by law

S-E-C-R-E-T

COUNTRY	USSR	REPORT NO.	
SUBJECT	Field Service Regulations of the Soviet Army (Regiment-Battalion) (1953)	DATE DISTR.	31 May 1955
DATE OF INFO.	April 1953	NO. OF PAGES	254
PLACE ACQUIRED	USSR	REQUIREMENT NO.	RD
DATE ACQUIRED	Early 1955	REFERENCES	

APPROVED FOR  
RELEASE  
HISTORICAL  
COLLECTIONS  
DIVISION  
HR-70-14  
4-18-2012

SOURCE EVALUATIONS ARE DEFINITIVE. APPRAISAL OF CONTENT IS TENTATIVE.

SOURCE: A usually reliable source ☐ Appraisal of Content: Documentary.

1. Attached is a copy of a translation of a Soviet Army manual, Field Service Regulations of the Soviet Army (Regiment-Battalion), published by the Military Printing Office, Ministry of the Armed Forces of the USSR, Moscow, in April 1953, with an order of the (then) Minister of Defense of the USSR, Marshal of the Soviet Union Bulganin, dated 10 April 1953, which made these regulations effective.
2. As far as source knows, no subsequent revision of this manual has been published and these regulations were still in effect in the Soviet Army as of the end of 1954.

S-E-C-R-E-T

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

MINISTRY OF DEFENSE OF THE USSR

Secret

[SEAL]

Copy No. \_\_\_\_\_

FIELD SERVICE REGULATIONS

OF THE

SOVIET ARMY

(REGIMENT - BATTALION)

MILITARY PRINTING OFFICE

MINISTRY OF DEFENSE OF THE USSR

MOSCOW - 1953

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

These Field Service Regulations (regiment-battalion) set forth the basic precepts for the preparation, organization, and conduct of battle by the regiment and battalion. They govern all the arms.

The organization and conduct of operations by battalions and regiments of the tank and mechanized troops and by the cavalry regiment are carried out in conformity with the instructions set forth in these Regulations. Peculiarities of the operations of these regiments and battalions, moreover, are set forth in special sections.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

SECRET

O R D E R  
OF THE MINISTER OF DEFENSE OF THE USSR  
No. 065

10 April 1953

Moscow

1. The Field Service Regulations of the Soviet Army (regiment-battalion) set forth herein are now in effect.
2. The Combat Regulations for Infantry of the Red Army, 1942, part 2 (battalion, regiment), and the Combat Regulations for Tank and Mechanized Troops, 1944, part 2 (battalion, regiment, brigade), are herewith superseded.

Minister of Defense of the USSR  
Marshal of the Soviet Union

N. A. Bulganin

~~SECRET~~



~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

[In the original Russian text this was a blank page, except for the phrase "448 pages are numbered in this book" appearing at the bottom of the page between the cover page and the Order.]

[Parentheses in the following translation represent parentheses in the original text. Usually they are used to indicate that the doctrine for the first unit mentioned is the same for the unit mentioned in the parentheses.

In other respects, too, the format of the translation follows as closely as possible the format of the original Russian text, except for pagination.

In the translation, additions in square brackets are insertions by the translators or editors, either explanatory words in English or transliterations of the original Russian text.

It should be noted that Soviet Army nomenclature as applied to tactical units is peculiar in that it has no single word for "unit", but uses four different terms, depending on the size and relative independence of the unit. There is no exact English equivalent for any of these terms. This peculiarity has caused considerable awkwardness in translating the terms. Three of these terms have been used in the present text:

- a. Soyedineniye is used by the Soviet Army to refer to a corps, a division, or a brigade. The components may be of a single arm or of various arms and services. In this translation, the term soyedineniye has been translated as "large unit".
- b. Chast is used by the Soviet Army to designate any unit of regimental or smaller size that is administratively self-contained and separately numbered, e.g., a rifle regiment, engineer battalion of a rifle division, or corps signal battalion. In this translation, the term chast has been translated as "unit".
- c. Podrazdeleniye is used by the Soviet Army to refer to a subunit of a chast. It is a unit which cannot be fully identified numerically except by reference to the larger unit of which it is a component, e.g., battalions, companies, and platoons of a rifle regiment; the battalions and batteries of an artillery regiment; the companies of an engineer or signal battalion. In this translation, the term podrazdeleniye has been translated as "small unit".

The Table of Contents is given at the end of the translation, as it appears in the original Russian text.

448 pages are numbered in this book.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

## Chapter I GENERAL PRINCIPLES

1. The regiment plays the principal role in destroying the enemy in modern combined-arms combat. Victory in combat is dependent upon the successful execution by the regiment of the combat mission.

The regiment carries out missions for the destruction of the enemy by employing heavy fire and maneuver in combination with a decisive attack.

To conduct combat, the regiment is usually reinforced by artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, small units of special troops, and air support.

The most important task for the destruction of the enemy is usually assigned to the rifle and mechanized regiments, which are basic to the organization of combined-arms combat and especially of coordination.

In the fulfillment of combat missions by the regiment, the principle burden in modern combined-arms combat falls upon the battalion and company. They have the leading role in the immediate destruction of the enemy.

The impetuous and persistent actions of the battalion and company in the offense and their tenacity in the defense are the guarantee of the successful accomplishment of the combat mission by the regiment.

Combat operations of the regiment (battalion) must be decisive and active and must be accompanied by swift and daring maneuver in conjunction with the skillful and complete employment of all weapons.

The personnel of the regiment must conduct combat operations with all their moral and physical strength, must display bravery, stamina, and initiative in combat and an unbending will to victory.

A high political-morale state, rigid military discipline, and combat solidarity, in combination with the excellent training of personnel, are the basic conditions for the achievement of success in combat.

2. The rifle (motorized rifle, mechanized, cavalry) regiment is a tactical unit of combined-arms. It is composed of battalions (in the cavalry, of troops), small units of regimental artillery, and other small units.

The motorized rifle regiment can be attached to tank regiments as small units.

3. The rifle (motorized rifle) battalion is a tactical small unit of combined-arms of a regiment. It is made up of rifle, machine gun, and mortar companies and other small units.

In order to carry out its combat mission, the rifle (motorized rifle) battalion must be reinforced with artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and small units of special troops, and it must have air support.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

A submachine gun battalion is a tactical small unit. In a tank (heavy tank and self-propelled) regiment, to conduct combat, it is usually attached to tank battalions or small units. When necessary, a submachine-gun battalion can operate as a complete battalion; in this case, it can be reinforced in the same manner as a rifle battalion.

4. A rifle (motorized rifle, mechanized, cavalry) regiment and rifle (motorized rifle) battalion can carry on stubborn and prolonged combat under all conditions of terrain and weather, at any time of year, day or night.

In coordination with other units and small units, the regiment and battalion have the capacity to:

- swiftly attack and destroy the defending enemy, occupy his positions, and successfully break up the attack;
- fortify the lines (objectives) which have been seized during the attack;
- surround and destroy the enemy and, in particular, his airborne landings;
- pursue the retreating enemy;
- make hasty river crossings, seize a bridgehead on the far shore, and hold it until the main force of the division (regiment) has crossed;
- stubbornly defend an occupied sector (area) of terrain;
- conduct a meeting engagement;
- cover the disengagement and the withdrawal of friendly troops.

5. A tank and self-propelled regiment is made up of tank companies, a battalion of self-propelled artillery, and other small units.

In the offense, a tank and self-propelled regiment, as a rule, is attached as small units to rifle (cavalry) regiments and battalions (troops) for their close support.

In defense, some of the small units of a tank and self-propelled regiment are attached to rifle (cavalry) regiments to reinforce their antitank defenses, while the remaining small units make up the division commander's tank reserve.

In a meeting engagement, when pursuing the enemy, and when operating in a forward detachment, the tank and self-propelled regiment can be employed as a complete regiment. In these instances, it is reinforced with rifle (cavalry) and artillery small units and also with small units of special troops, and it has air support.

A tank and self-propelled regiment, with all or part of its forces, can also be employed to repel enemy tank attacks (counterattacks), destroy his airborne landings, and cover the withdrawal of a division.

S-E-C-R-E-T

6. A tank regiment (battalion) is a tactical unit (small unit). It is made up of tank battalions (companies) and other small units. In coordination with rifle (motorized rifle, mechanized) and artillery units (small units) and small units of special troops, the tank regiment (battalion) has the capacity to:

- break through, from the march, a hastily occupied enemy defense, destroy personnel and materiel by a decisive attack and by firepower, and develop a swift attack in the depths of his defense;

- pursue the retreating enemy;

- occupy favorable lines and points and hold them until friendly troops have arrived;

- repulse enemy tank and infantry attacks and counterattack him; when necessary, it can stubbornly defend occupied sectors (areas) of terrain;

- conduct a meeting engagement;

- cover the disengagement and withdrawal of friendly troops;

- destroy enemy airborne landings.

The tank regiment (battalion) may be reinforced with heavy tanks, self-propelled artillery, artillery, small units of special troops, and also with air support. When necessary, motorized rifle small units can be attached to a regiment (battalion).

In special cases, some of the small units of a tank regiment of a tank division can be attached to a motorized rifle regiment.

The tank battalion of a mechanized regiment, as a rule, is attached as small units to reinforce the motorized rifle battalions of a regiment.

A separate tank regiment in the offense is attached to rifle large units for the close support of the infantry in the direction of the main attack. In the defense, it is employed as a tank reserve; some of its small units can be attached to rifle units to reinforce their antitank defense in the most important directions accessible to tanks.

7. A heavy tank and self-propelled (separate heavy tank and self-propelled) regiment consists of tank battalions, battalions of self-propelled artillery, and other small units. It is intended to combat enemy tanks and self-propelled artillery, to destroy his antitank artillery, and also to neutralize and destroy defensive installations. Small units of a heavy tank and self-propelled regiment are usually attached to mechanized (tank, motorized rifle) regiments to reinforce them; they can also be employed in the capacity of a tank (artillery-antitank) reserve.

Small units of a separate heavy tank and self-propelled regiment are attached to rifle regiments and, in special cases, to mechanized regiments.

In repelling attacks (counterattacks) of large enemy tank forces, the regiment can be employed as a complete regiment.

S-E-C-R-E-T

~~SECRET~~

8. A heavy tank battalion and a battalion (artillery battalion) of self-propelled artillery can be attached to a mechanized (tank, motorized rifle, rifle) regiment as small units or as a complete battalion.

In a mechanized (tank) division, a heavy tank battalion may comprise the tank reserve.

A battalion (artillery battalion) of self-propelled artillery, in part or as a complete battalion, may be located in the tank or the artillery-antitank reserve.

When necessary, small units of self-propelled artillery, operating in the second echelons and reserves of large units, can be used for fire, by order of the senior commander, from indirect firing positions.

9. A regiment (battalion) of amphibious tanks is intended to reinforce large units and units which are carrying out combat missions involving the forcing of river crossings, which are conducting operations on lake-marshy terrain, or which are operating as an amphibious landing force. It is attached to them as small units and sometimes as a complete regiment for the close support of the infantry operating in the first echelons, in reconnaissance, and in forward detachments.

When necessary, a regiment (battalion) of amphibious tanks can be employed for the independent execution of combat missions with respect to the reconnaissance and seizure of important lines and objectives situated beyond water barriers. In other cases, the regiment (battalion) is reinforced by small infantry units, artillery, and special troops.

10. A motorcycle regiment (battalion) is a tactical unit (small unit). It is made up of battalions (companies) and other small units. The regiment (battalion) is intended for conducting reconnaissance of the enemy. In addition, it has the capacity to:

- pursue the retreating enemy, destroy headquarters and signal centers, and disrupt the work of the enemy rear;
- destroy enemy airborne landings;
- seize crossings, important lines, and objectives, and hold them until the arrival of friendly troops;
- protect the exposed flanks of friendly troops.

The motorcycle regiment and battalion can carry out reconnaissance missions operating as an entity or as small units which are designated as reconnaissance detachments and separate reconnaissance patrols.

Independent of the character of the combat mission to be carried out, the motorcycle regiment and battalion may be reinforced with artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, small units of special troops, and air support.

11. An artillery (mortar) regiment is made up of artillery (mortar) battalions (batteries) of the same or different calibers and of other small units.

The artillery (mortar) battalion is the primary firing and tactical small

~~SECRET~~

~~SECRET~~

unit of the artillery. It is made up of several batteries of the same or different calibers and of other small units.

The artillery (mortar) regiment, as a complete regiment or by battalions, may be included in the composition of an artillery group; it can also be attached by battalions or batteries to small rifle (motorized rifle, tank, cavalry) units.

12. An antiaircraft artillery regiment (separate battalion) is the primary firing and tactical unit of antiaircraft artillery.

The antiaircraft artillery regiment consists of batteries (battalions) of the same or different calibers and of other small units.

A separate antiaircraft artillery battalion consists, as a rule, of several batteries of the same caliber and of other small units.

An antiaircraft regiment (separate battalion) usually is included in the composition of an antiaircraft artillery group (subgroup), which is intended to protect troops and important objectives from enemy air strikes and to combat his airborne landings.

The antiaircraft artillery regiment (separate battalion), in exceptional cases, may be drawn into combat with the enemy ground forces, mainly his tanks and self-propelled artillery.

13. The regiment (battalion) takes up a combat formation for the conduct of battle. The combat formation must be compatible with the purpose of the impending operations.

The combat formation of an attacking regiment consists of two echelons, or of one, an artillery group, and reserves. When organizing a regiment into two echelons, the first echelon, as a rule, consists of the combat formations of the battalions (troops) which are attacking abreast; one battalion (troop) is usually assigned to the second echelon of the regiment.

The combat formation of a regiment in the defense consists of one or two echelons, an artillery group, an antitank area (in individual cases—two), and reserves. When organizing a combat formation into two echelons, the first echelon, as a rule, consists of the combat formations of the battalions (troops) which are defending abreast; one battalion (troop) is usually assigned to the second echelon.

The composition of the regimental echelons, artillery group, antitank area, and reserves is determined according to the mission and situation.

The combat formation of a rifle (motorized rifle) battalion in the offense and in the defense consists of two, or one, echelons, a reserve, and the weapons which remain under the control of the battalion commander.

The first echelon, as a rule, consists of the combat formations of the rifle companies, and of tanks, self-propelled artillery, and small units of special troops; one rifle company is usually assigned to the second echelon.

The second echelon receives combat missions at the same time as the first

~~SECRET~~

echelon. These missions are outlined in more detail by the regimental (battalion) commander when the second echelon is committed.

The combat formation of a tank battalion consists of a single echelon and a reserve. The echelon includes the combat formations of the tank companies, attached small units of heavy tanks, self-propelled artillery, and motorized rifle and sapper small units.

When organizing the combat formation and when distributing men and materiel, there must be no stereotype.

14. The regimental artillery group is set up by the division commander to handle missions in the interests of the rifle regiment. It receives the same number as the regiment and is attached to the regiment.

A regimental artillery group for a tank regiment is designated when the regiment operates in the first echelon.

15. Regimental and battalion reserves, as a rule, are created when the combat formation is organized in one echelon. When operations are conducted in cities, in forests, and in mountainous-wooded terrain, a regimental (battalion) reserve may be created for any organization of the combat formation. The reserve is intended to handle missions which arise suddenly. In a regiment the reserve usually consists of a reinforced company (in a cavalry regiment—from two platoons to a troop), and in a battalion it consists of a reinforced platoon.

The reserve can be reinforced with artillery, self-propelled artillery, and small sapper units, and also with tanks when the regiment has been sufficiently reinforced with them. In a tank regiment (battalion), the reserve can be reinforced with self-propelled artillery and with motorized rifle and sapper small units.

An artillery-antitank reserve is organized in a regiment in any situation and is intended to combat enemy tanks and self-propelled artillery. It is composed of small antitank artillery units, gun artillery, and self-propelled artillery, and is reinforced with flamethrower units and with small sapper units equipped with mines and other means of creating obstacles.

In a tank regiment, the artillery-antitank reserve is organized when the regiment is reinforced with antitank artillery.

As a rule, a tank reserve is not organized in a regiment. In some instances, it can be organized by order of the senior commander only after the first and second echelons of the regiment have been sufficiently reinforced with tanks and self-propelled artillery.

16. A march support detachment, which is used to construct cross-country routes and to rebuild roads and bridges along the march route of a regiment, is organized in a rifle (motorized rifle, mechanized, tank, cavalry) regiment when attacking, pursuing, and also executing a march. In addition, it can be used to clear obstacles from regimental concentration areas.

Rifle, sapper, and chemical defense small units and also road construction and other special vehicles may be included in a march support detachment, depending on the type of combat operations and missions to be carried out.

When necessary, the detachment places route markers in plain sight and, in some instances, designates guides to indicate the regiment's direction of march.

~~SECRET~~

17. The regiment (battalion) assumes a march formation to execute a march. The march formation must conform to the plan of forthcoming operations.

The march formation of a regiment may consist of one, two, or three march columns.

The march formation of a battalion and of a cavalry regiment consists of one march column.

In order to insure a swift deployment into a combat formation and the least vulnerability to enemy artillery fire and air strikes, the regiment, during the approach to the battlefield, is dispersed in open formation by battalions (by troops), while the small units in the battalions follow in open formation on motor vehicles (armored personnel carriers) or on foot.

~~SECRET~~



CHAPTER II

COMMAND OF REGIMENT AND BATTALION

18. Regimental and battalion commanders, depending upon the amount of time designated for preparing to accomplish a combat mission, must so plan their work in preparing and organizing combat that commanders of small units are given the greatest amount of time possible for the same purpose.

All work of regimental and battalion commanders in preparing, organizing, and carrying out combat operations is conducted secretly and directly on the terrain.

Regimental and battalion commanders must continuously and thoroughly study the situation, anticipate its possible changes and the intentions of the enemy, and always be ready to make a sound decision quickly and to give specific missions to subordinate commanders.

In preparing, organizing, and carrying out combat operations, regimental and battalion commanders must avoid a fixed pattern, must always aspire toward a wide display of creativeness and initiative, toward attaining surprise, and must persistently develop these qualities in their subordinates.

19. Widely utilizing available forces and means for controlling subordinate small units, regimental and battalion commanders must continuously observe the progress of combat operations and decide basic questions of the control of small units in combat by means of personal contact with subordinate commanders. Personal contact with subordinates is especially necessary prior to combat and during decisive changes in the situation.

20. Regimental and battalion commanders must continuously strengthen military discipline and must teach personnel a spirit of unswerving fulfillment of orders, unquestioning observance of military duty, and unlimited loyalty to their Soviet Motherland, to the Soviet Government, and to the cause of the party of Lenin and Stalin.

In the interest of educating their subordinates, regimental and battalion commanders must use various forms and methods, depending upon the combat situation, and, in first priority, personal contact with subordinates.

21. Regimental and battalion commanders bear full responsibility for preparing and organizing combat and especially for coordination, for the control of subordinate small units, for their successful accomplishment of combat missions, for the correct utilization and skillful control of attached and supporting units (small units), and also for the maintenance of continuous coordination.

The commander must know at all times the locations, activities, and needs of subordinate small units, and what their political-morale state is; he must influence the course of combat operations with the forces and equipment which he has at his disposal, without awaiting the requests of his subordinate commanders.

22. The basis of control is the decision of the commander. The making of a well-founded decision is possible only as a result of a clear understanding of the mission received, the correct evaluation of the situation by the

~~SECRET~~

regimental (battalion) commander, and an understanding of the fundamentals of combined-arms combat.

In clarifying the mission received, the regimental (battalion) commander must understand the intent of his immediate commander (what he wishes to achieve in combat) and must clearly understand the place the regiment (battalion) has in the accomplishment of the division (regimental) mission, specifically, in what echelon, in what direction, and with what mission the regiment (battalion) is operating; also, he must take into account what units and small units are supporting or are attached to the regiment (battalion).

After clarification of the mission, the regimental (battalion) commander determines which measures must be carried out immediately for the preparation and organization of combat; he also computes the time needed by subordinate commanders for this, and budgets his own time; he issues necessary instructions, and then evaluates the situation.

23. In evaluating the situation the regimental (battalion) commander studies:

--the composition of the enemy forces, their state, grouping, and the character of their operations;

--the missions of adjacent units;

--the composition, state, and disposition of his own small units, and their material and technical support;

--the character of the terrain: relief, soil, observation conditions, the presence of natural obstacles, and cover, and roads.

In evaluating the situation, the regimental (battalion) commander also considers the weather conditions, time of day, time of year, and their influence upon regimental (battalion) operations.

Studying the situation, the regimental (battalion) commander ascertains the extent to which it assists or interferes with the accomplishment of the assigned mission, and what measures must be carried out in order to eliminate factors interfering with the accomplishment of the mission or to lessen their negative influence.

Before making a decision, the regimental commander usually listens to necessary briefings.

When preparing for combat in a limited period of time, the regimental commander may listen only to briefings on the most vital subjects or limit himself to a generalized briefing by his chief of staff.

Incomplete data on the situation do not free the regimental (battalion) commander from responsibility for making a timely and well-founded decision.

Every decision of the regimental (battalion) commander is reported by him to the division (regimental) commander.

24. The regimental (battalion) commander, in order to evaluate the situation carefully and make the most expedient decision, conducts a reconnaissance [rekognostsirovka].

~~SECRET~~

During the reconnaissance, the regimental (battalion) commander determines more precisely the situation and grouping of the enemy, studies the terrain in detail, determines the possible organization of the combat formation of the regiment (battalion), determines combat missions for small units, the character and scope of engineer works, and the sequence of their accomplishment, and also selects locations for command and observation posts.

Prior to conducting the reconnaissance, the regimental commander indicates to the chief of staff: the missions of the reconnaissance; the time of the reconnaissance; who is to participate in the reconnaissance; what groups are to be organized for reconnaissance, their commanders, and missions; with which commanders from subordinate and attached (supporting) units (small units) and from adjacent units meetings must be organized, at what points, and at what time.

The regimental staff, on the basis of the regimental commander's instructions, usually prepares a reconnaissance plan.

The following usually participate in the reconnaissance conducted by the regimental commander: the deputy regimental commander; the chief of staff or his deputy; the chief of intelligence; the chief of communications; the chief of artillery; the commander of the regimental artillery group; the regimental engineer; the chief of chemical warfare service; and also in accordance with instructions from the regimental commander, the commanders of subordinate and attached (supporting) units (small units).

Reconnaissance groups are organized for the study of separate directions and areas (sectors) of terrain, and also for preparing data concerning the combat employment of the units (small units) of the combat arms. The deputy regimental commander, the commander of the regimental artillery group, chiefs of services, and battalion commanders are usually assigned as the commanders of these reconnaissance groups.

The deputies to the regimental commander for supply and for technical matters [zamestitel komandira po tekhnicheskoy chasti], the regimental chief of artillery, the commander of the regimental artillery group, and chiefs of services, on the basis of the instructions of the regimental commander, conduct reconnaissance together with their subordinate commanders (chiefs).

In the battalion the following conduct a reconnaissance: the battalion deputy commander, the battalion chief of staff or the assistant chief of staff, the chief of communications, and the commanders of subordinate and attached (supporting) small units.

The battalion staff does not prepare a reconnaissance plan. The battalion commander personally determines the manner of conducting the reconnaissance.

The regimental (battalion) commander usually conducts the reconnaissance from several points. At the beginning of the reconnaissance, the regimental (battalion) commander orients the participants on the terrain; he points out reference points and, if necessary, gives the code names of terrain features; he acquaints the officers with the regimental (battalion) mission; after that, he proceeds to the study of indicated problems.

In order to preserve secrecy in conducting a reconnaissance, the following are provided for:

~~SECRET~~

--selection of well camouflaged halting points and a dispersed disposition at them;

--the stealthy movement of reconnaissance participants to halting points;

--the type of dress used by reconnaissance participants;

--measures for the protection of reconnaissance participants and for the security of documents;

--preparation of halting points for reconnaissance participants.

25. After finishing the reconnaissance, the regimental (battalion) commander makes a decision in which he determines:

--in offensive combat--the direction of the main blow in which the main efforts must be concentrated for accomplishing the given mission; in defensive combat--terrain areas and terrain features, the holding of which determines the firmness of the defense;

--the deployment for combat;

--the combat missions for subordinate and supporting small units (units);

--the manner of coordination of small units (units) in the accomplishment of the assigned missions;

--missions for combat, political engineer, material, and technical support of small units (units).

After making a decision, the regimental (battalion) commander, on the terrain, gives an oral combat order and then organizes coordination.

The decision which has been made must be put into effect firmly and consistently. The order must be fulfilled exactly, within the designated period, and with maximum effort.

26. The following are indicated in the combat order:

--reference points (from right to left);

--point 1 - composition, location and character of operations of the enemy;

--point 2 - the combat mission of the regiment (battalion) and the decision of the commander;

--point 3 - combat missions of immediately adjacent units and the boundary lines with them;

--point 4 and successive points - combat missions for the battalions (companies) with the designation of attached and supporting small units; missions of battalions (companies) for securing boundaries and flanks, and for antitank and antiaircraft defense; the left boundary line for every battalion in the first echelon.

~~SECRET~~

Further, in separate points, are indicated:

--missions for artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, sappers, and other small units (units), which are to be accomplished in the interests of the entire regiment (battalion);

--composition of reserves and their missions;

--composition of the march support detachment and its missions;

--antitank, antiaircraft, and chemical warfare defense missions to be accomplished in the interest of the entire regiment (battalion);

--missions to be accomplished by aircraft, and, also, if necessary, missions to be accomplished by other units (small units) operating in the regimental (battalion) zone;

--time of readiness to accomplish the mission;

--location of command and observation posts of the regimental commander (observation post of the battalion commander) and the direction of their displacement;

--deadlines and means of submitting combat reports;

--signals.

To supplement the combat order, the regimental (battalion) commander issues necessary instructions for political support, for all types of combat support, for engineer support, and also issues the orders (instructions) for the rear.

Furthermore, the regimental (battalion) commander issues instructions concerning areas of disposition of vehicles (armored personnel carriers) and concerning the manner of their displacement during the battle. If necessary, instructions concerning this may be stated in the combat order.

The oral combat order of the regimental (battalion) commander is written down in full by an officer of the staff, while small unit commanders and chiefs of services write down the parts concerning them; after that, the regimental staff formulates a written combat order.

27. In organizing an offensive while on the move or in the preparation of an offensive within a limited time, and also during a combat operation, combat instructions are issued, verbally or written, instead of a combat order or to elaborate on it.

Combat instructions include brief information on the enemy and on adjacent units, the combat mission of the small unit receiving the combat instructions, the manner of accomplishing this mission, and also the missions of supporting small units.

Warning instructions are issued to troops in order to give them more time to prepare for an impending operation. It is not permitted to break the secrecy of the impending operation in the warning instructions.

Combat instructions delivered verbally must be recorded by officers of the staff.

28. Combat operations of the regiment (battalion) are determined by the assigned combat mission.

The combat mission for a regiment in offensive combat is divided into the immediate /blizhayshaya/ mission, the subsequent /posleduyushchaya/ mission, and the mission of the day /zadacha dnya/.

The combat mission for a battalion in offensive combat is divided into the immediate mission and the subsequent mission, and the direction of further attack is indicated.

The depth of combat missions varies and is dictated by the possibility of accomplishing each of the missions with a single combat formation and a single system of organizing coordination.

In the defense, the combat mission is not divided into immediate and subsequent missions and mission of the day.

29. The organization of coordination between the small units of the regiment (battalion), with units (small units) of other combat arms and special troops, and also with adjacent units, is the most important responsibility of the regimental (battalion) commander.

The essence of coordination in combat consists in concerted combat efforts in point of objective, time, and place, and in the mutual assistance of units and small units of all arms and of adjacent units. Coordination is carried out by all commanders and staffs during the entire course of the combat operation.

Coordination is organized by the commander on the terrain on the basis of the decision taken. The attainment of reliable coordination is possible only with the correct understanding of the assigned regimental (battalion) mission.

During an attack, coordination within the regiment and battalion is organized according to missions, and is made more detailed in point of lines and time. In this respect, coordination is organized in detail for the extent of the immediate and subsequent missions and in general outline for the entire depth of the combat mission of the regiment (battalion).

In the defense, coordination in the regiment and in the battalion is organized according to missions and according to directions for counterattacks.

The regimental commander, in organizing coordination, utilizes his deputy commander, the chief of staff or his deputy, the chief of artillery of the regiment, commanders of battalions (cavalry troops), the commander of the regimental artillery group, the commander of the attached tank unit (small unit), the representative of the supporting aviation, the regimental engineer, the regimental chief of intelligence, the chief of communications, and the chief of chemical warfare service.

The battalion commander, in organizing coordination, utilizes his deputy commander, chief of staff, company commanders, commanders of small units of attached or supporting artillery, commanders of small units of close support tanks and of self-propelled artillery, and also the chief of communications.

Coordination in the regiment (battalion) in offensive operations is drawn up on a map or on a sketch.

In the defense, coordination in the regiment is drawn up as a coordination planning table, and in the battalion--as a defense sketch with a legend.

30. The regimental commander controls small units personally and through the regimental staff.

The regimental chief of staff is the first deputy of the regimental commander.

In implementing the decisions of the regimental commander, the chief of staff, if necessary, has the right to issue instructions (directives) to individuals subordinate to the regimental commander in the latter's name. The chief of staff reports to the regimental commander about all such instructions (directives).

The commander acquaints the chief of staff with his assumptions and intentions and keeps him informed of the content of instructions which he has personally issued.

The chief of staff must always be ready to brief the commander on the situation, offering relevant conclusions and his own suggestions. The chief of staff must organize the work of the staff so that instructions given personally by the commander to subordinates will quickly be made known to the staff, and so that supervision over their execution will be set up.

Verification of the fulfilment of orders and instructions in conjunction with practical assistance to subordinates is a primary responsibility of the regimental commander and staff.

31. The regimental staff ensures the commander thorough and continuous control over small units.

It is the responsibility of the regimental staff to:

--organize combat support in accordance with the decision of the commander;

--collect, study, and process information on the enemy, on our own troops, and on the terrain, information on the weather and the area of operations; brief the commander on this information;

--issue warning instructions, formulate the combat order and other operations documents, and deliver them to small unit commanders;

--carry out, during the entire course of the operation, coordination between small units of all the combat arms and special troops and with adjacent units;

--organize command and observation posts, their security and defense;

--organize communications, ensuring the commander control of his small units;

--prepare and carry out measures for communications security by small units;

--organize preparations for combat and supervise its progress in the small units;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- supervise compliance with camouflage measures;
- organize the commandant's service [traffic and camouflage control] and the conveying of prisoners-of-war;
- supervise the timely and organized movement of transport;
- send situation reports to higher headquarters, inform the commanders and staffs of subordinate small units, adjacent units, and chief of services concerning the situation;
- supervise the timely and precise fulfillment of the commander's combat orders (instructions) and supervise all operations of the small units;
- continually know the status of armament, combat equipment, transport; the degree to which small units are provided with the basic supplies; the status of the rear area, and continuously supervise its operation;
- [provide] continuous guidance [rukovodstvo] of battalion staffs;
- supervise the work of the staffs of attached units (small units);
- receive challenge and password in good time from higher headquarters, and pass this on to the small units (units);
- supply small units with topographic maps (map substitutes, photos) of the area of impending combat operations;
- keep the regimental war diary;
- study and generalize the lessons learned from combat experiences and assure their timely dissemination to the small units;
- keep a record of personnel, armament, combat equipment, transport, and horses; and also keep a record of losses and of captured equipment;
- constantly supervise the status of records of personnel and losses in the small units;
- supervise the burial of personnel who have died or have been killed in action; record the location of their burial; and send notification to the appropriate military commissariats concerning servicemen killed in action, dead, or missing in action;
- take measures to safeguard documents.

The staff of a rifle (motorized rifle, mechanized, cavalry) regiment is a combined-arms staff.

32. All work of the regimental commander, of the staff, and also of every officer in the regiment is conducted under conditions maintaining the strictest secrecy concerning the scheme and organization of combat operations.

The regimental commander first acquaints the chief of staff, his [the commander's] deputies, the regimental chief of artillery, the regimental engineer, and the chief of chemical warfare service with the mission received and the scheme of operations.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



The chief of staff, in turn, acquaints his deputy and the chief of communications with the scheme of operations.

The battalion commander first of all acquaints his chief of staff, his deputies, and the battalion chief of communications with the given mission and the scheme of operations.

Further, as the time for beginning the operation approaches, and as permitted by the regimental (battalion) commander, the number of officers drawn into this work increases.

33. The regimental commander, depending upon the situation, controls the small units in combat from his command post or observation post.

During the battle, depending upon the speed of its development, the commander may control small units while on the move (that is, from a tank, armored personnel carrier, or vehicle).

The command post is usually organized in the area where the second echelon (reserve) of the regiment is located, or close to it, in a location affording control and uninterrupted communications with subordinate and cooperating small units (units).

The regimental commander's observation post is a component part of the command post and is organized as close as possible to the first echelon small units, in a location from which the regimental commander can personally observe the battlefield, the operations of the enemy and of his own regiment, primarily in the direction of the main attack, and can control the small units and support them with uninterrupted communications.

In addition to the main command and observation posts, alternate command and observation posts are organized.

The commander of a cavalry regiment, in a mounted attack, personally directs combat operations by being located in the combat formation of the cavalry troops delivering the main blow; troop commanders personally lead their small units into the attack.

The regimental commander specifies the location of the command and observation posts. Occasionally the division commander indicates the location of the command post.

The observation posts of the commander of the regimental artillery group and of the commanders of supporting artillery battalions are located together with the observation posts of the commanders of the units and small units which are being supported, so that continuous personal contact is assured. Thus, when for convenience of fire direction in support of a small unit, the observation post of the artillery battalion commander is temporarily located separately, a forward observation post of the artillery battalion must be located with the commander of the small unit.

The regimental (battalion, artillery battalion) commander, when his subordinate small units are operating as part of other units, (small units), organizes his own observation post together with the observation post of the commander of that unit (small unit) to which the greater part of his small units are attached.

~~SECRET~~

34. The following are located in the regimental commander's command post: the regimental commander, his deputies, the regimental staff, and the chiefs of services specially designated by the commander.

Regimental headquarters personnel concerned with supply, administration, and replacements form the rear group of the headquarters and are located in a covered place in the regimental rear service area. The chief of this group is the deputy for supply of the regimental commander.

An officer from the staff and observers with observation equipment are always located in the regimental commander's observation post.

The following must be with the regimental commander when he is at the observation post: the deputy regimental chief of staff, the chief of intelligence, the regimental chief of communications, the chief of artillery, the commander of the regimental artillery group, and chiefs of services as designated by the commander.

35. Displacement of the regimental commander's command and observation posts during an offensive operation must be planned according to missions and time so that there is no break in their contact with the small units and no break in communications with subordinate and supporting small units (units) and with higher headquarters.

Displacement of command and observation posts, as a rule, proceeds by echelons.

In the defense, the displacement of command and observation posts is effected periodically, depending upon the situation, and also in accordance with special instructions from the senior commander.

The regimental commander reports to the division commander and informs the commanders of subordinate and cooperating small units (units) concerning a movement to a new observation post.

The movement of the regimental staff to a new command post is effected with the permission of the chief of staff of higher headquarters. When the regimental staff moves to a new command post, the old command post is maintained temporarily in reserve.

The displacement of the command posts of the commander of the regimental artillery group and of commanders of artillery battalions supporting small units, during an offensive, takes place, as a rule, simultaneously with the displacement of the observation posts of the combined-arms commanders. The chief of staff of the regimental artillery group (artillery battalion) usually remains at the old observation post in order to maintain uninterrupted fire direction until the commander arrives at the new observation post and takes over the fire direction.

36. The battalion commander personally controls his small units from his observation post, as a rule, by giving verbal combat orders, combat instructions, and command and signals. During the battle, when the operation is developing swiftly, the battalion commander may control small units while on the move (from a tank, armored personnel carrier, or vehicle).

In isolated cases, when all other means of controlling small units are excluded, the battalion commander personally leads the small units of the battalion in the attack.

~~SECRET~~

The observation post of the battalion commander is organized immediately behind the small units of the first echelon of the battalion, in a place which permits the commander uninterrupted control of the small units, allows him to see the enemy and to observe the combat operations of his small units and the adjacent units.

The battalion commander specifies personally the location of his observation post; the regimental commander, however, sometimes indicates the location of the observation post of the battalion commander.

The battalion commander conducts the displacement of the observation post independently, in accordance with the advance of the small units of the battalion, not losing contact with them. The battalion commander reports to the regimental commander his movement to the new observation post.

During the move to the new observation post, the battalion commander must not lose contact with the regimental commander or with the commanders of subordinate and supporting small units.

The commander of a tank battalion or of a battalion (artillery battalion) of self-propelled artillery, who is located directly in the combat formations of his small units, directs them from a tank (self-propelled artillery piece) by radio, by visual signals, and by his own example.

37. The staff of a rifle (motorized rifle) battalion is always located with the battalion commander at the observation post and assists him in preparing for combat, in organizing the combat support of the small units, and in controlling them in combat.

The staff of a tank battalion in offensive combat, as a rule, moves on armored personnel carriers immediately behind the battalion commander; in the defense, the staff is located at the observation post with the battalion commander.

The battalion chief of staff is a deputy battalion commander.

The battalion staff must:

- know and study continually the opposing enemy;
- know at all times the situation and state of the small units of the battalion, and supervise their fulfillment of combat orders and instructions;
- assist the battalion commander in organizing and implementing coordination and combat support;
- gather information on the situation in the battalion sector and in the sectors of adjacent units, and also transmit to the small units and to the adjacent units necessary data on the situation;
- record orders and combat instructions of the battalion commander; prepare written combat reports, necessary sketches, and, in case of necessity, even written combat instructions;
- prepare observation posts for the battalion commander, organize movement to them, and organize their security and defense;

~~SECRET~~

--organize communications and carry out measures to insure communications security in the small units;

--know exactly the number of men in the small units; keep a record of them at all times; also know the amount and condition of armament, combat equipment, transport, and horses, and keep a record of them;

--supervise continually the keeping of records on personnel and losses in the small units;

--keep an account of losses and of captured equipment;

--form a plan for combat preparations and supervise the progress of preparations in the small units;

--know at all times the status of material supply of the small units, and continually supervise the work of the small rear service units of the battalion;

--insure timely receipt of the challenge and password from the regimental staff, and their dissemination to the small units;

--insure timely request and receipt of topographic maps (map substitutes, photos) of the area of impending operations, and their timely supply to the small units of the battalion.

38. Assuring uninterrupted operation of communications is a primary responsibility of the regimental (battalion) commander and staff.

In order to control small units in combat, the regiment (battalion) organizes command communications, coordination communications, rear area communications, and warning communications.

Command communications are established between command and observation posts, according to the instructions of the regimental (battalion) chief of staff. The means to establish this are detailed as follows:

--wire ---by the regimental (battalion) staff;

--radio and mobile means of communication ---by the regimental (battalion) staff and by the commanders of subordinate small units.

In the regiment, radio and wire command communications must ensure the maintenance of communications with commanders directly subordinate and with commanders two levels lower (company commanders).

Coordination communications insure coordination of operations of the regiment (battalion) and its small units with the attached and supporting units (small units) and with adjacent units. Coordination communications are organized according to the instructions of the chief of staff of the regiment (battalion).

Rear area communications in the regiment (battalion) are established by wire and mobile means of communication, and also by personal contact. In the regiment, moreover, radio may be used.

Warning communications in the regiment (battalion) are organized according to the instructions of the next higher headquarters, and are set up using radio nets, two-station radio nets, wire communications, and visual and sound signals.

~~SECRET~~

39. The basic means of communication in combat is the one which has the capability of most fully insuring the control of small units and their coordination.

Radio is the most reliable means of communication in combat; therefore, the loss of radio contact cannot be tolerated.

Wire communication insures the quickest transmission of instructions and reception of reports, is convenient for the conduct of conversations, and is organized in all types of combat. Wire communications, and also mobile means of communication are established from the senior commander to subordinates, and laterally, - [using] the means of the unit on the right to [establish] communication with the adjacent unit on the left.

Mobile means of communication are used in various types of combat to deliver combat documents and official packages.

Communication with the assistance of visual and sound signals is organized in order to give commands in combat.

In the regiment, moreover, liaison officers are utilized for communications.

In all cases, if communication is not established by the means of the senior commander or is lost, the subordinate must establish communications using his own personnel and equipment.

40. The control of small units of the regiment by radio is carried out with the aid of coded maps, conversation tables, and tables of radio signals.

Radio transmission in clear text is permitted:

--in the artillery --when giving commands for fire direction;

--in rifle (cavalry), motorized rifle, and tank small units of battalion (troop) size and smaller, and also in tank and in tank and self-propelled regiments--in transmitting all commands (instructions) in combat;

--in forward detachments and in reconnaissance detachments--in conducting a combat operation;

--in warning of the appearance of enemy tanks and aircraft, and also in warning of enemy chemical attack.

In the battalion, at the discretion of the battalion commander, clear text may even be used to transmit reports, if the situation is such that coding would delay the taking of emergency measures.

The numbers and designations of units (small units), duty assignments of commanders, and terrain features are coded when transmitted in clear text.

In order to avoid provocations on the part of the enemy, when transmitting in the clear, it is necessary that transmitting radios use an authenticator.

It is not permitted to transmit by radio during regroupings for the concentration or relief of troops, or during preparation for the attack.

~~SECRET~~

In the defense, the use of radio communications is permitted only when wire communications have been destroyed and when communicating with small units assigned for reconnaissance and security. After the start of the enemy attack, radio communications are used without restriction.

Commanders of units (small units) must know how to conduct conversations by radio and must see to it that they have a radio with them under all circumstances.

In employing all the means of communication, especially radio and wire, it is necessary to keep in mind that the enemy may overhear or intercept transmissions and conversation. In all types of combat, it is necessary in the regiment (battalion) that only a limited number of individuals use the means of communication, and that the rules of communications security in small units (units) be strictly observed.

41. The commandant's service is organized by the regimental staff for all types of combat for the maintenance of general order in the areas of disposition of the small units, the regulation of traffic and the supervision of the observance of camouflage measures by the small units.

Regimental officers, officers of attached units (small units), small commandant's units, and small traffic-regulating units are employed to carry out the duties of the commandant's service.

~~SECRET~~

CHAPTER III

1. GENERAL PRINCIPLES

42. The combat successes of the Soviet Army are inseparably bound to the political and military training and high morale of the military personnel.

43. The regimental (battalion) commander is fully responsible for the state of political work in his regiment (battalion). It is his duty daily to direct the political apparatus and control the activities of Party and Komsomol organizations in order to insure the successful fulfillment of combat missions which have been assigned to the regiment (battalion) and its small units, to strengthen military discipline, and to elevate the political-morale state of the personnel.

44. Political work in a combat situation is organized on the basis of the decisions of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union and the Soviet Government, the orders and directives of the Supreme Commander and of front and army commanders, and the combat orders of commanders; its main goal is to ensure victory over the enemy.

45. Political work in a regiment (battalion) has the following missions:

--to ensure the high combat efficiency of the unit (small units), to strengthen military discipline, and to raise the political-morale state of the personnel; to know each soldier, noncommissioned officer, and officer;

--to educate military personnel in the spirit of Soviet patriotism, Soviet national and military pride; passionate love and loyalty to the Soviet Motherland, the Soviet Government, and the cause of the party of Lenin and Stalin; and loyalty to the military oath;

--to teach the soldiers, noncommissioned officers, and officers to believe in the rightness of our cause; to hate the enemy; to have an inexorable will to victory; to be ready under any conditions and at any price, without sparing one's blood and even life itself, to protect the state interests of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics;

--to explain to the soldiers, noncommissioned officers, and officers the guiding and directing role of the Communist Party, the advantages of the Soviet social and governmental system over the capitalistic system, and also the reasons, character, and political aims of war, and the missions confronting the Soviet Army; the international and internal situation of the USSR; to conduct extensive propaganda on the combat successes of the Soviet Army and Navy at the front, and on the feats of labor of the Soviet people in the rear;

--to educate personnel in the spirit of absolute fulfillment of their commanders' orders, and constant readiness to protect them in combat;

--to educate personnel in the military traditions of the Soviet Army and of its large units and units and in the heroic achievements of military personnel; in the spirit of love for the regimental colors, as a symbol of military honor, valor, and glory, and the desire to guard it as the apple of their eye;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

--to instill in the soldiers, noncommissioned officers, and officers faith in the strength and power of their weapons and equipment; a sense of responsibility for the preservation of their arms, equipment, transportation facilities, horses, and military property; and a constant desire to improve their combat skill; the spirit of military comradeship and mutual help in combat; and to cultivate a high spirit of aggressiveness, courage, audacity, initiative, and the ability doggedly to overcome all the hardships and deprivations resulting from a combat situation;

--to support politically the commander's measures for the organization of coordination between small regimental (battalion) units, with attached and supporting units (small units) and also with adjacent units;

--to maintain among personnel extreme alertness and skill in guarding military and state secrets; to guard the regiment (battalion) against penetration by spies and diversionists; to unmask enemy propaganda;

--to see to it that various measures pertaining to political work are carried out among replacements and studied by same;

--to see that all material--living and cultural needs of the soldiers, noncommissioned officers, and officers are properly met.

46. The content, forms, and methods of political work are determined by concrete combat missions and peculiarities of the combat situation. In the organizing of political support for regimental (battalion) combat activities, a creative approach is an important factor in the success of political work.

Personal contact with subordinates, as a basic form of political work, is a constant duty of all commanders and political workers.

47. Political support of the combat activities of a regiment (battalion) must go on continuously.

This is achieved:

--by the systematic influence of commanders and political workers on their subordinates, in order to maintain in them a fighting spirit and a high political-morale state;

--by the strengthening of Party and Komsomol organizations in small units, and also by the correct distribution of Communists and Komsomol members;

--by operational direction of the Party-political workers of small units;

--by timely replacement of political workers and secretaries of Party and Komsomol organizations which have been put out of action;

--by timely exchange of political information between higher and lower echelons.

The more complex and tense the combat situation becomes, the more active must the political work become.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

48. After a commander makes a decision and corresponding directives are received from him, the deputy regimental (separate battalion) commander for political affairs must work out a plan for political support of regimental (battalion) combat activities, and must present it to the commander for approval.

The plan of political support of the regimental (battalion) combat activities makes provision for:

- the content, forms, and methods of political work among personnel;
- the manner of instructing commanders and political workers of small units;
- measures which must be carried out by the Party and Komsomol organizations;
- measures pertaining to mass agitation and propaganda work among the personnel;
- measures pertaining to political work to be carried out in rear service small units [tylovye podrazdeleniya], designed to ensure the uninterrupted supply of the regiment (battalion) with everything necessary for the successful conduct of battle;
- measures for political support of the evacuation of sick and wounded from the battlefield;
- ensurance of the prompt organization of the burial of Soviet military personnel, who have been killed fighting for the Motherland, and for according them proper military honors;
- the selection and proper training, from among Communist and Komsomol members, of the necessary reserves to be utilized for the replacement of casualties among the secretaries of the Party and Komsomol organizations of small units.

49. The deputy commander for political affairs must report promptly to his commander on the progress of Party-political work, the political-morale state, military discipline, and the material conditions of the personnel.

## 2. POLITICAL WORK UNDER VARIOUS CONDITIONS OF COMBAT OF A REGIMENT (BATTALION)

50. In offensive combat, political work is utilized to create in soldiers, noncommissioned officers, and officers a high spirit of the offensive and a firm determination to destroy the enemy.

The success of the political work in offensive combat depends on its skillful organization throughout the battle and is achieved:

- by explaining to the soldiers the combat mission, the significance of the contemplated offensive, and by mobilizing them for the execution of the commander's combat order;
- by explaining to the soldiers the combat successes of the Soviet Army and also the successes of their own regiment (battalion); by widely popularizing

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

the heroic exploits of the soldiers, noncommissioned officers, and officers in the combat formations, and by direct influence on them;

--by the personal example of courage and daring in combat of commanders, political workers, Communists, and members of the Komsomol;

--by the mobilization of personnel for the consolidation of the success achieved and by the firm repulse of enemy counterattacks;

--by the correct distribution of political workers and by skilled direction of all political work conducted in the small units.

51. In the defense, political work has the purpose of giving the soldiers, noncommissioned officers, and officers invincible steadfastness and firmness and of creating in them a high spirit of the offensive for the transition to determined attack.

This is achieved:

--by explaining to the personnel the combat tasks of the forthcoming defensive battle; by systematic work for strengthening military discipline and morale and the firmness and persistence of the troops in repulsing enemy attacks;

--by inculcating in personnel the awareness that no one has the right to leave the positions occupied or to withdraw without the commander's order;

--by the personal example of courage and daring, during combat, of the commanders, political workers, Communists, and members of the Komsomol;

--by mobilizing personnel for the quick and stealthy accomplishment of the construction, preparation, and concealment of positions;

--by explaining to personnel the value of accurate and concentrated fire in defensive combat;

--by political support of the operations of small units detailed for reconnaissance, combat security, observation posts, listening posts, and ambushes;

--by explaining to personnel the necessity of maintaining a high degree of vigilance; by organizing the struggle against enemy provocations, and by unmasking hostile propaganda;

--by using, in political work, reports concerning the successful offensive operations of our troops on other sectors of the front; by using the facts of the heroic deeds of soldiers, noncommissioned officers, and officers.

In the defense, individual work with each soldier takes on unusually deep significance. Commanders and political workers must pay particular attention to this.

52. During combat in encirclement and during escape from encirclement, political work has the aim of maintaining in the personnel of the regiment (battalion) high combat spirit, stamina, firmness, good organization, and discipline, while not allowing the least manifestation of a decadent spirit, feeling of doom, and disbelief in the possibility of victory.

~~SECRET~~

This is accomplished:

--by the personal example of commanders and political workers in combat and by their constant contact with the soldiers and noncommissioned officers;

--by the firmness, courage, and daring of the Communists and members of the Komsomol in the combat formations, and their skill in leading all personnel;

--by explanation of the basic value of mutual support and comradely help during combat in encirclement and during escape from encirclement;

--by relentless struggle against panic-mongers and cowards;

--by unmasking hostile propaganda and provocations by the enemy;

--by issuing to personnel reports concerning our own combat successes on the front, and by skillful use of these reports to keep up the morale of soldiers, noncommissioned officers, and officers;

--by systematic use of propaganda for helping encircled troops;

--by explaining to personnel the necessity of conserving armament, equipment, transportation, horses, and military property and of the economical expenditure of ammunition, fuel, lubricants, rations, and forage.

53. In disengaging from battle and withdrawal, political work has the purpose of strengthening the fighting spirit and discipline of personnel, of increasing stability and stubbornness in rear guard action and preventing the appearance of panic, disorganization, and decadent spirits.

This is achieved by the following:

--by mobilization of the personnel of the covering small units for daring, decisive, and active operations, in order to ensure the organized disengagement from battle and withdrawal of the main body;

--by the personal example of firmness and persistence on the part of commanders and political workers, Communists, and members of the Komsomol during rear guard actions;

--by explaining to personnel the necessity for conserving armament, equipment, transportation, horses, and military property;

--by a relentless struggle against panic-mongers and cowards;

--by care concerning the timely evacuation of the wounded and sick.

54. During the movement of a regiment (battalion), political work has the purpose of ensuring its timely arrival at the assigned area in full readiness for combat.

This is achieved by the following:

--by explaining to personnel the necessity for observing military order, discipline, and the rules of concealment, for increased vigilance and the strict keeping of military secrets;

--by political support of the actions of march security;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

--by constant care for conserving the strength of the soldiers, messing on time, rest periods, the observance of water discipline, and in addition, during the winter, guarding against frostbite;

--the mobilization of personnel for the conservation of armament, equipment, transportation, horses, and military property.

55. During the disposition of troops at a halt, political work has the purpose of ensuring combat readiness and high vigilance, the keeping of military secrets, and secrecy of the disposition of the regiment (battalion). Special attention must be given to the political support of combat readiness and of the operations of small units assigned to outpost security, and also of small alert units.

56. In reconnaissance small units, political work has the purpose of training scouts, who are capable of securing, under any conditions, timely information concerning the enemy.

This is achieved by the following:

--by the mobilization of the personnel of reconnaissance small units for the accomplishment of the combat mission assigned by the commander;

--by the training of reconnaissance scouts in such qualities as veracity, courage, audacity, keenness of observation, initiative, resourcefulness, great vigilance, and the ability under any conditions to keep military and state secrets;

--by the careful organization of the political support of the combat operations of the reconnaissance small units.

57. In rear service small units, political work has the purpose of ensuring the timely and complete supply of the regiment (battalion) with ammunition, fuel and lubricants, rations, and everything necessary for life and the conduct of battle.

This is achieved by the following:

--by mobilizing the personnel of rear service small units for the successful and timely fulfillment of an order (instruction) of the regimental (battalion) commander;

--by instilling in the personnel of the rear service small units an awareness of the necessity for the careful storage of ammunition, rations, forage, fuel and lubricants, and other military property;

--by explaining to operators (chauffeurs) of transport vehicles and [wagon] drivers the necessity for timely delivery of ammunition, rations, forage, and other military property, and for their observance of the order of movement along the roads;

--by the strictest supervision of political workers over the timely and full supply of the prescribed supplies to all military personnel;

--by explaining to all commanders and to the medical personnel of the regiment (battalion) the importance of the rapid evacuation of the injured from

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

the battlefield and of giving them prompt medical aid;

--by mobilizing the personnel of the technical component of the regiment (battalion) and of the small maintenance units for the prompt evacuation of damaged vehicles and armament from the battlefield and their reconditioning;

--by explaining to all commanders and to the personnel of the veterinary service the importance of the prompt evacuation of injured horses from the battlefield and of prompt veterinary aid to them.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

## CHAPTER IV

### SECURITY IN COMBAT

58. The purpose of security in combat is to enable units (small units) to enter into combat at the proper time and in an organized manner under all conditions of the military situation. Such security also protects the units from surprise attacks by enemy ground and air forces.

Combat security of a regiment (battalion) includes the following: reconnaissance, security, antitank and antiaircraft defenses, measures for combat against enemy airborne landings, anti-chemical defense, security of boundaries and flanks, camouflage, and measures for defense against enemy radio interference.

A regimental (battalion) commander bears personal responsibility for the organization and accomplishment of combat security in the regiment (battalion). He must in good time assign missions for combat security and detail the necessary men and materiel for this purpose.

On the basis of the missions designated by the regimental commander and the instructions issued by the division, the regimental staff organizes combat security and supervises the execution, by the small units, of the designated measures.

Combat security on battalion level is organized personally by the battalion commander.

The battalion staff assists the battalion commander in organizing combat security.

#### 1. RECONNAISSANCE

59. Reconnaissance is one of the most important measures for the combat security of units (small units). The constant and active conduct of reconnaissance is a basic duty of all commanders and staffs in every situation.

Reconnaissance must obtain timely information regarding the enemy, terrain, weather, and zone of anticipated operations, which is necessary in order for the commander to make a decision.

Reconnaissance is conducted actively and constantly, by day and night, to the front, on the flanks, and on the regimental (battalion) boundaries. The main forces and equipment detailed for reconnaissance should be employed on the main direction and for reconnaissance of the main objectives.

Once contact has been established with the enemy, it must not be broken. The enemy, once detected, must be kept under systematic observation.

The aims of reconnaissance are as follows:

- to find out the location, grouping, and nature of enemy operations; the strength, composition, numbering, and combat efficiency of enemy units; the

~~SECRET~~

existence of tanks and self-propelled artillery, particularly on the main line of resistance of the enemy's defense; combat (march) formations; the system of fire; the disposition of artillery, mortars, antitank guns, new fighting equipment being used by the enemy; means of chemical attack; command and observation posts; the nature of defensive installations and obstacles; flanks and boundaries; and finally to discover new methods in the enemy's tactics;

- to ascertain the character and peculiarities of the relief of the terrain, natural obstacles, and terrain features, hidden approach and access routes, ground and road conditions, the degree to which the terrain may affect the operations of units (small units), and the existence of local resources.

Reconnaissance of the area of anticipated operations should ascertain the political feelings of the local population, as well as the economic, medical /sanitary/, and veterinary conditions of the area.

Weather reconnaissance is aimed at obtaining timely information about meteorological conditions, and their anticipated changes in the area of combat operations.

Reconnaissance information, when acquired, is to be checked systematically.

60. Under conditions of direct contact with the enemy, reconnaissance in the regiment (battalion) is conducted in force, by raids, ambushes, observation, and interception /podslivshivaniyem/.

Moreover, reconnaissance information is used which was obtained by units and small units of other arms and special troops, by adjacent units, higher headquarters, and by air reconnaissance. Use is also made of information obtained through interrogation of prisoners and defectors, inquiries made of local inhabitants, and through the study of captured documents and materiel.

61. On the basis of instructions received from the /regimental/ commander and higher headquarters, the regimental staff prepares a reconnaissance plan and a combat directive for reconnaissance, and ensures their execution.

As soon as reconnaissance information reaches the headquarters, it is examined, compared with previously obtained information concerning the enemy, and without delay is submitted to the commander, the chief of staff, and higher headquarters. Necessary information on the enemy is communicated simultaneously to subordinate small units, to attached and supporting units (small units), and to adjacent units.

62. Reconnaissance in force is conducted according to the order of a senior officer, by reinforced forward battalions and reconnaissance detachments supported by artillery fire and air operations.

As soon as reconnaissance in force begins, all observation points and posts conduct observation. The regimental (battalion) commander conducts observation personally. Artillery, engineer, and chemical warfare reconnaissance are conducted simultaneously.

63. Observation is organized in all types of combat operations of the regiment (battalion) and is conducted by all commanders personally, by observers from the observation posts of the regiment (battalion), and also by observers in small units.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

The number of observation posts depends on the situation. Two or three observation posts are usually organized by a regiment and one or two by a battalion. Two or three observers are sent to each post, one of whom is designated to act as senior observer. Specially trained soldiers, noncommissioned officers, and officers are designated as observers. Communications are established with the observation posts. The latter are provided with observation equipment, compasses, large-scale maps or topographic charts, charts of landmarks, message forms, and observation journals.

During the advance of the regiment (battalion), observers displace in a designated direction from one place on the terrain to another to enable them to observe the enemy as well as the operations of their own troops.

Observation is supplemented by interception [podslыshivaniyem], particularly at night and under conditions of limited visibility. Means for lighting up the area are used at night.

The results of observations are marked on a map or chart, recorded in the observation journal, and, at established periods of time, are reported to the commander. Important information is reported at once.

64. A raid consists of the stealthy approach of a small unit (reconnaissance group) assigned to a reconnaissance mission to a previously noted and studied objective for the execution of a surprise attack on it for the purpose of capturing prisoners, documents, samples of arms, and equipment.

65. An ambush consists of the timely and carefully camouflaged disposition of a small unit (reconnaissance group) assigned to a reconnaissance mission on the most probable routes of movement of the enemy for the execution of a surprise attack on him in order to capture prisoners, documents, samples of arms, and equipment.

66. Raids and ambushes in the regiment and battalion are organized, under conditions of immediate contact with the enemy, according to the orders of the regimental commander. For the purpose of making raids and setting up ambushes, small units with a strength of a squad to a reinforced platoon are usually detailed and, in some cases, reconnaissance groups are formed of specially selected soldiers and noncommissioned officers.

In case of necessity, the small units (reconnaissance groups) include reconnaissance personnel from other arms and from special troops.

To support small units conducting raids, the regimental commander details artillery, mortars, machine guns, and small sapper units. The procedure for opening and conducting fire by weapons detailed for fire support is established each time separately, according to the situation.

67. Interrogation of prisoners and defectors is one of the most important sources for obtaining information about the enemy.

Captured prisoners and defectors are interrogated at once by the commander of the small unit and are removed without delay to the regimental (battalion) headquarters.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



The fact that prisoners have been captured and that defectors have been seized and the fact that information has been received from them are communicated at once to the senior officer and to headquarters.

Sometimes it is advisable to take the prisoners to an area from where they can indicate the disposition of their small units, weapons, observation posts, defense installations, and obstacles.

Interrogation which is conducted at regimental (battalion) headquarters must be brief and aimed at obtaining only that information which is necessary for the combat purpose of the regiment.

The regimental commander interrogates personally individual prisoners and defectors, examines the most important captured documents, and acquaints himself with the captured samples of enemy arms and equipment.

Written notes are taken of the data supplied by prisoners and defectors at the headquarters. These notes and the captured documents are transmitted by regimental headquarters to division headquarters simultaneously with the prisoners and defectors.

Information received through interrogation of prisoners and defectors must be accurately verified and compared with data received from other sources.

68. Reconnaissance of the terrain is one of the most important duties of a regimental (battalion) commander. Such reconnaissance is constantly conducted for the purpose of ascertaining ahead of time the nature of the terrain; the condition of routes of movement; the passability of the terrain, across country, for tanks, self-propelled artillery, armored personnel carriers, and other vehicles; the conditions of orientation, observation, and camouflage; and to determine the possible effect of the terrain on the operations of the troops.

Information on terrain conditions can be obtained by the following means: reconnaissance, study of photographs, maps, and descriptions of the terrain, inquiries among local inhabitants, and also by the interrogation of prisoners and defectors. Moreover, information obtained by the reconnaissance activities of other arms and of higher headquarters is also used.

Reconnaissance of routes of movement is organized by the regimental (battalion) commander before the march, during the offensive, in the course of pursuing the enemy, and also while preparing counterattacks in the defense and during withdrawal.

69. In the absence of direct contact with the enemy and when the flanks are open, the rifle (motorized rifle, mechanized, tank) regiment sends out for reconnaissance separate reconnaissance patrols in strength from a squad up to a reinforced platoon; or a reconnaissance detachment in the strength of a reinforced reconnaissance (rifle, tank) company; a cavalry regiment sends out separate mounted patrols.

A battalion conducts reconnaissance by separate reconnaissance patrols.

During combat, reconnaissance can be conducted by combat reconnaissance patrols sent out by commanders of rifle companies and tank battalions; in the cavalry--by mounted combat patrols, sent out by the regimental commander and commanders of cavalry troops [eskadronov].

~~SECRET~~

A motorcycle (rifle, motorized rifle, tank) battalion (cavalry troop) may be assigned as a reconnaissance detachment on orders of the division commander.

The distance of a separate reconnaissance patrol (separate mounted patrol) and of a reconnaissance detachment from the security line of the friendly troops depends on the reconnaissance mission, the composition of small units, transportation means, as well as on the possibility of maintaining communication with them.

70. A separate reconnaissance patrol (in the cavalry--a separate mounted patrol) is sent out for the reconnaissance of an objective or of a direction in the following strength:

- a motorized (mechanized) patrol--from a squad to a reinforced rifle platoon on trucks (armored personnel carriers), with tanks and self-propelled artillery, or in the strength of a reinforced platoon of tanks, to a distance of up to 20 kilometers;

- a foot patrol (when the regiment and battalion are moving on foot)--from a squad to a reinforced platoon at a distance of up to 8 kilometers from the security line of their own troops;

- a separate mounted patrol--from a squad to a platoon at a distance of up to 15 kilometers;

The commander of a separate reconnaissance patrol (mounted patrol) personally conducts reconnaissance under the cover of the men of his patrol.

71. A reconnaissance detachment is organized from reconnaissance units and small units, or from small units of motorcycle (rifle, motorized rifle, tank, or cavalry) troops, reinforced by artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and by small units of sappers and chemical warfare troops.

To conduct its reconnaissance operations, a zone or direction is assigned to the reconnaissance detachment. The width of the zone depends on the mission, the strength of the detachment, the existence of roads, and the conditions of the terrain.

A reconnaissance detachment in the strength of a motorcycle (rifle, motorized rifle, tank) battalion is assigned a zone up to 8 kilometers in width; a detachment in the strength of a reinforced reconnaissance (rifle, tank) company or of two cavalry troops--a zone up to 5 kilometers in width; and a detachment in the strength of one cavalry troop--a zone up to 3 kilometers in width.

The operational distance of a reconnaissance detachment may be as follows: for a detachment on foot--up to 15 kilometers, cavalry--up to 30 kilometers, and motorized (mechanized)--up to 30 kilometers.

For the purpose of conducting reconnaissance in a designated zone or direction, the commander of the reconnaissance detachment sends out reconnaissance patrols (in the cavalry--mounted patrols) in strength from a squad up to a platoon, assigning the following distances: for foot patrols--from two to 4 kilometers, motorized (mechanized) patrols--from 5 to 10

~~SECRET~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

kilometers, and for cavalry patrols--up to 8 kilometers. The number of patrols (mounted patrols), their composition, and reinforcement depend on the combat situation, the nature of the terrain, the width of the reconnaissance zone, and the existence of roads and their condition.

The commander of a reconnaissance detachment maintains contact with his reconnaissance patrols (mounted patrols) by radio, by mobile means of communication, and by visible signals.

Although reconnaissance is conducted by patrols (mounted patrols), the commander of the detachment must, in addition, conduct reconnaissance personally. He does this by observation and usually proceeds at the head of the column of the main body of the detachment. The detachment commander transmits information to the senior commander without delay.

Until it establishes contact with the enemy, the reconnaissance detachment moves on the roads as quickly as possible for the purpose of gaining time. The detachment moves stealthily in the area of possible contact with the enemy from one concealed point to another, quickly traversing open spots.

The reconnaissance detachment, on encountering the enemy, conducts reconnaissance in force and by observation and ambushes. Small groups of the enemy are captured or destroyed. Through bold and decisive action, the reconnaissance detachment can penetrate to the main forces of the enemy and find out their composition and direction of movement, or the defense system of the enemy.

The reconnaissance detachment must strive, under any circumstances, to capture prisoners. After a brief interrogation, the captured prisoners, documents, and samples of armament are sent at once to regimental (division) headquarters.

72. For the purpose of obtaining information about the enemy at the beginning of and during combat under conditions of a rapidly changing situation, during a surprise appearance of the enemy on the flank and in the rear of our troops, and also for checking contradictory information about the situation, establishing the disposition of friendly and adjacent troops, and ascertaining in greater detail information regarding the terrain in the combat area, the regimental (battalion) commander also sends out officer reconnaissance. Officer reconnaissance is conducted on tanks, armored personnel carriers, motorcycles, trucks, and horses, and is headed by an experienced, courageous officer capable of swiftly orienting himself on the situation. Officer reconnaissance is sent out for short periods of time and generally no farther than 3 to 5 kilometers from friendly troops. This reconnaissance is expected to act boldly, stealthily, at high speeds, halting only briefly for observation. Reconnaissance is conducted personally by the officer and the information obtained by him must be submitted at once to the superior officer who sent him on the reconnaissance mission.

In case the enemy threatens an adjacent unit, the existence of such a threat must be rapidly brought to the attention of that unit.

73. The regimental (battalion) commander or the chief of staff personally assigns the mission to commanders of small units which are detailed for reconnaissance.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

The mission includes the following:

- information about the enemy;
- data about one's own and adjacent small units which are carrying on reconnaissance;
- the combat composition of the small unit detailed for reconnaissance, its missions in terms of phase lines and time;
- when to commence reconnaissance, the zone or direction (objective) of reconnaissance, the final point or line, when to conclude the reconnaissance, and where to return;
- to whom, where, and by what time to present reports;
- the method of maintenance of communications;
- recognition signals for friendly aviation;
- the method of passing through one's front line, the password and countersign;
- the procedure for the evacuation of wounded and dead, and also for the delivery of prisoners, captured weapons, and documents.

It is forbidden to take on reconnaissance missions maps which contain notes about the disposition of our troops, combat and personal documents, and also technical manuals of vehicles and trip tickets.

74. Communication with separate reconnaissance patrols (separate mounted patrols), with a reconnaissance detachment, and with officer reconnaissance is ensured by radio and by mobile means of communication.

75. Artillery reconnaissance is carried out by observation from ground observation posts by all artillery commanders, by soldier, noncommissioned officer, and officer observers, by artillery reconnaissance groups, by instrument reconnaissance units and small units, by radar equipment, by spotter aircraft, by observation balloons, and by artillery fire.

Artillery reconnaissance must establish:

- the disposition of enemy personnel, weapons, tanks, command and observation posts, radar stations, defensive installations, and obstacles;
- the grouping of enemy ground and antiaircraft artillery;
- the exact coordinates of targets subject to neutralization (destruction) by artillery and mortar fire;
- observation of the enemy situation and actions, his troops, and the results of his artillery fire;
- the character of the terrain in enemy and friendly territory for determining the areas of possible deployment of artillery and the degree of

~~SECRET~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

influence of the terrain on the actions of artillery.

In addition to this, units and small units of artillery, by means of instrument reconnaissance, carry out artillery surveys, ground photography of targets, and the adjustment of artillery fire; they also supply the artillery with meteorological data.

76. Air reconnaissance is carried out by the crews of observation, ground attack, and fighter aviation, as well as by all crews carrying out combat missions in support (accompaniment) of the troops in battle.

Air reconnaissance is carried out by visual observation, by radar, and by the photographing of areas, lines, routes of communication, and objectives. Interpreted aerial photographs or mosaics are immediately given to troop /voyskovyye/ headquarters by the headquarters of aviation units.

All results of the observation of the enemy and his materiel on the battlefield are transmitted from planes by radio in clear text and are received by all headquarters.

77. Engineer reconnaissance is carried out by small units of engineers independently or as part of small reconnaissance units which have been detailed by the regimental commander. For independent reconnaissance, engineer units and small units assign observation posts, reconnaissance groups, and separate reconnaissance patrols.

Engineer reconnaissance must establish:

- the location and nature of enemy antitank and antipersonnel obstacles (especially mines) and defensive installations, their system and degree of preparation, as well as the character of engineer works being produced by the enemy;
- the character and peculiarities of natural obstacles;
- the conditions of by-passing or surmounting obstacles and obstructions;
- the condition of the routes of movement and the degree of passability of terrain off the roads;
- the presence of local equipment and materials for engineer work;
- concealment conditions;
- the availability and condition of water sources.

78. Chemical warfare reconnaissance is carried out by chemical observation posts, chemical reconnaissance patrols, as well as by all other observation posts and reconnaissance small units of all arms and of special troops whose composition includes chemical warfare personnel.

Chemical warfare reconnaissance must establish:

- the areas of concentration of chemical warfare small units (units) of

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

the enemy, and his chemical warfare armament and ammunition;

- the preparation of the enemy for chemical attack and the beginning of the attack;
- the areas subject to chemical attack;
- the presence in the air and on the ground of poisonous substances;
- the presence of chemical warfare obstacles, the routes to by-pass them or the most suitable directions for construction of passages through them;
- the presence of local equipment which may be utilized for antichemical defense.

## 2. SECURITY

79. The regiment (battalion) is protected: on the march--by march security; when disposed for a halt--by outpost security; and in battle--by combat security. In addition to this, local security is organized under all conditions.

The regimental (battalion) commander organizing security is obliged to:

- determine the strength and composition of security small units and assign them missions;
- indicate the time, method of movement, relief, and shift of security small units from one type of security to another;
- assign forces and equipment for the support of small units assigned to security;
- establish the method of maintenance of communications with security small units.

The forces and equipment assigned to security are determined by the situation and by the character of impending actions.

Small units assigned to security are usually strengthened by machine guns, grenade launchers, artillery, mortars, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and small units of special troops.

## 3. ANTITANK DEFENSE

80. Antitank defense is organized by the regimental (battalion) commander in all circumstances.

All organic and attached antitank weapons, which must be in constant readiness for repelling an enemy tank attack, are used for antitank defense. In battle as well as on the march, in anticipation of a clash with the enemy,

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

antitank weapons are echeloned in the entire depth of the combat (march) formation; in this report the larger part is utilized in the probable direction of enemy tank activity.

81. Observation of enemy tanks is carried on by small units assigned for reconnaissance and security, by observation posts and designated observers in every small unit, as well as from all observation posts; in the regiment, observation of enemy tanks is carried out, in addition to this, by an air observation, warning, and communication post.

The warning of small units of the appearance of enemy tanks is effected by means of visual and sound signalling, as well as by all operating radio nets, two-station radio nets, and wire lines.

#### 4. ANTIAIRCRAFT DEFENSE

82. Antiaircraft defense is organized by the regimental (battalion) commander in all circumstances.

For antiaircraft defense, the regimental (battalion) commander utilizes all organic and attached antiaircraft small units and infantry weapons.

83. Infantry small units conduct organized machine gun and volley fire against enemy planes and parachutists at heights up to 1000 meters, and antiaircraft machine gun small units--up to 2000 meters.

Antiaircraft weapons as well as machine gun small units assigned for battle with enemy aircraft must be in constant readiness for the immediate opening of fire.

All small units of the regiment (battalion) are obliged to disperse in time, to be camouflaged, to utilize natural cover, to dig slit trenches for personnel, and to set up cover for vehicles and horses.

Observation of the air is carried on uninterruptedly and must be all-around. At regimental headquarters there is organized an air observation, warning, and communication post. In addition to this, air observation is carried out by all command (observation) posts, by observation posts, by small units detailed for reconnaissance and security, as well as by observers in the small units.

The warning of small units about the appearance of enemy planes as well as about his airborne landings is carried out with the highest priority by all available means of communication.

In the event of the dropping (landing) of enemy airborne troops in the area of regimental operations, the regimental commander takes measures for destroying them.

#### 5. DEFENSE AGAINST CHEMICAL ATTACK

84. Defense against chemical attack is organized by the regimental (battalion) commander in all conditions.

~~SECRET~~

~~SECRET~~

Chemical reconnaissance must be conducted constantly in the regiment (battalion) in order to expose enemy preparations for a chemical attack, to determine the beginning of the attack, and to warn small units about it.

Chemical observation in the regiment (battalion) is conducted by chemical observation posts and by all other observation posts, and in small units by observers. The warning of small units about an enemy chemical attack is carried out with the highest priority by established signals and by all available means of communication.

All personnel must be ensured of individual means of antichemical defense and of means of decontamination and must keep them in constant combat readiness. The most important shelters are equipped for antichemical defense; for defense against the spraying of poisonous substances, and against enemy flamethrower-incendiary weapons, overhead cover is constructed over trenches and communication trenches, as well as over firing positions.

Horses are provided with means of antichemical defense and decontamination.

85. During an attack by enemy aviation using poisonous substances, small units of the regiment (battalion) take antichemical defense measures and repel the enemy aircraft with their weapons.

The upsetting or weakening of a chemical attack being carried out by enemy ground weapons is achieved by conducting artillery (mortar) fire against firing positions, areas of distribution and deployment of enemy chemical units, and **lines from which the enemy releases gas or poisonous smoke.** Moreover with the aim of disrupting an enemy chemical attack, the regimental commander calls in aviation.

In all cases of enemy chemical attack, the small units of the regiment (battalion), using means of antichemical defense, continue the execution of their combat mission.

Aid is immediately rendered to those hit by poisonous substances: arms, equipment, transport, clothing, and personal equipment are decontaminated. Contaminated food-stuffs and forage are confiscated. Contaminated sectors of the terrain are marked and individual sectors are decontaminated or gaps are made in them.

The regimental (battalion) commander takes measures for the timely replacement of expended antichemical defense materials.

## 6. SECURITY OF BOUNDARIES AND FLANKS

86. Reliable security of the boundaries and flanks in all types of battle must be the constant **responsibility of every commander.**

The security of the boundaries and flanks of units and small units consists of the designation of commanders responsible for the boundaries and flanks; of their continuous support by all types of fire, especially artillery and mortar fire; and of the erection of various types of obstacles.

Moreover, the security of the boundaries and flanks is achieved by locating

~~SECRET~~



~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

the regimental (battalion) second echelon and reserves behind them. The security of boundaries and flanks is organized in the entire depth of the combat formation of the regiment (battalion).

Success of actions for the security of the boundaries and flanks is achieved by:

- the careful organization of coordination between small units on the flanks;
- the presence of uninterrupted communications between small units on the flanks;
- the organization of reconnaissance forward of the boundaries and flanks.

In the defense, the organization of the security of the boundaries between regiments is formulated by appropriate documents which are compiled by representatives of the adjacent regiments and higher headquarters.

87. During enemy attempts to break through along the boundaries, mutual support between adjacent units and small units is carried out primarily by fire.

The coordinated disposition of weapons must create cross fire ahead of the boundaries. In the event the enemy wedges in along a boundary, he must be counterattacked on the flank, surrounded, and destroyed.

During the battle, the regimental (battalion) commander organizes systematic control over the fulfillment by small units of their missions for the security of the boundaries and flanks. With a change in the situation on the boundaries and flanks, he additionally strengthens the corresponding small units with weapons.

## 7. CONCEALMENT

88. Concealment of personnel, armament, equipment, transport, horses, engineer-type installations, and obstacles, as well as of the of rear service small units is organized by the regimental (battalion) commander in all conditions of a combat situation.

89. In accordance with the plan of the senior commander and the orders of the regimental commander, the staff works out and executes measures for concealment.

The following are fundamental measures for concealment:

- the utilization of night time and conditions of the terrain and weather for the actions of small units;
- the use of organic and improvised means of camouflage, and also of smoke means;
- the prohibition of the movement and location of small units, equipment, and transport in sectors surveyed by enemy ground and air observation and disclosed by his radar equipment;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- the prohibition of movement at night of combat and transport vehicles with unextinguished or undarkened headlights;

- the construction of dummy objects.

#### 8. MEASURES FOR DEFENSE AGAINST RADIO INTERFERENCE

90. For defense against enemy radio interference, the staff, on the basis of instructions from higher headquarters and orders of the regimental commander, works out measures which raise the steadiness of radio communications, defines radio operating procedure, and also provides for the means of disclosing and destroying radios which the enemy has left in the area of disposition of the regiment for the creation of interference.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

## Chapter V

### THE ORGANIZATION AND OPERATION OF THE REGIMENTAL (BATTALION) REAR

91. The regimental (battalion) commander is fully responsible for the organization of the rear and for the material, technical, medical, and veterinary support of the regimental (battalion) small units.

92. The regiment is provided with materiel according to classes of supplies. Each class of supply in the regiment is administered by a chief of service, who is directly subordinate to the regimental commander or to his deputy for supply, or to the deputy for technical affairs (to the chief of technical affairs), or to the chief of the regimental artillery.

The regimental deputy commander for political affairs is in charge of the supply of political-instructive materials; the chief of staff is in control of topographical maps; and the regimental chief of finance is in charge of financial allowances.

93. Maintenance of combat and transport vehicles, armament, signal communication facilities, and other technical equipment consists in the organization and carrying out of their correct technical employment, servicing, and preservation, and also in the carrying out of repairs and evacuation.

Maintenance of combat and transport vehicles in the regiment (battalion) is directly organized by the deputy for technical affairs (chief of technical affairs); in the cavalry regiment, it is organized by the deputy for supply; for artillery armament, it is organized by the chief of artillery armament; for signal communication equipment, engineer, chemical, and other kinds of equipment, it is organized by the corresponding chiefs of services.

Maintenance in small units is performed by the personnel of the small units under the direction of their commanders and also by repair shops and small maintenance units.

94. The regimental staff aids the commander in ensuring conformity in the work between the commander's deputies and the chiefs of services in the organization and operation of the regimental rear, and also exercises supervision over its operation.

95. The regimental and battalion rears, which consist of small rear service units designated for the material, technical, medical, and veterinary support and servicing of the regiment (battalion), are a component of the troop rear.

Small rear service units consist of:

- in the regiment: a regimental aid station, repair shops (companies), a truck company (administrative supply platoon- [khozyaystvennyy vzvod], dumps, and a veterinary hospital;

- in the battalion: a battalion aid station, a supply platoon, and an automotive repair shop (a tank repair workshop or a maintenance platoon).

~~SECRET~~

~~SECRET~~

96. A regimental rear area, with a depth of up to 15 kilometers, and routes for supply and evacuation are designated for the disposition and operations of the small regimental rear service units in the defense and during a withdrawal.

Regimental rear areas are designated only for regiments operating in the first echelon.

The size of the regimental rear area is determined by the situation, and also by the possibility of accommodating and organizing the operations of the rear service small units.

The regimental rear area is limited by boundary lines: on the right and left, by adjacent units; and, in the rear, by the next rear area in depth.

In offensive combat, regimental rear areas, as a rule, are not designated, but areas (points) for locating rear service small units and supply and evacuation routes are indicated.

Regimental rear service small units, operating in the second (third) echelon and located in reserve, as well as units (small units) attached to the division, are located in areas (points) according to the instructions of the division commander.

97. The shortest routes for bringing up supplies to the battalions and for evacuation are designated by the regimental commander, who takes into account the situation and the availability and condition of roads and also the possibility of repairing them.

98. The regimental (battalion) commander determines the order and time for displacing rear service small units.

Frequent displacements of regimental rear service small units for short distances are not expedient.

During an offensive, the regimental aid station and the regimental ammunition supply point are given first priority in displacement.

99. Regimental dumps receive, guard, account for, and distribute materiel to the small units; they also prepare for forwarding to division dumps and repair shops armament and equipment which is surplus or in need of repair and which cannot be repaired by the facilities of the regiment.

Regimental dumps, except for artillery dumps, are deployed for operations at a distance of up to six kilometers from the front lines when in the departure position for an attack, and up to 10 kilometers when in the defense.

100. The regimental artillery dump and other small units for the service of artillery equipment are deployed in combat at the regimental ammunition supply point, which is located up to five kilometers from the front line when in the departure position for an attack, and up to eight (8) kilometers from the front line when in the defense.

The chief of the regimental ammunition supply point is the regimental chief of artillery armament.

~~SECRET~~

101. In combat, the battalion supply platoon sets up the battalion ammunition supply point and the battalion supply point [punkt khozyaystvennogo dovol'stviya], the locations of which are designated by the battalion commander or, in individual cases, by the regimental commander. In the tank battalion (self-propelled artillery battalion), only the battalion supply point is set up.

The battalion ammunition supply point is set up at a distance of up to two kilometers from the front line when in the departure position for an attack, and up to three kilometers when in the defense.

The chief of the battalion ammunition supply point is the battalion supply platoon commander (chief of artillery armament).

The battalion supply point is deployed at a distance of up to three kilometers from the front line when in the departure position for an attack and in the defense.

The chief of the battalion supply point is the commander of the supply section [khozyaystvennogo otdeleniya] of the battalion supply platoon.

102. The regimental ammunition supply point receives, guards, accounts for, distributes, and prepares ammunition and armament for forwarding to the battalion ammunition supply points or directly to the small units and also receives from these units, and prepares for evacuation, unrepaid and surplus armament, expended cartridge cases, packing, and other military property.

The battalion ammunition supply point receives, guards, and accounts for ammunition, armament, and chemical warfare equipment and carries them to company ammunition supply points. Chemical warfare equipment is sent to the battalion ammunition supply points from the regimental technical equipment dump.

The delivery of ammunition from the company ammunition supply point to company small units is made by ammunition bearers [podnoschikami] designated by small unit commanders, or it is made by armored personnel carriers. The provisioning of battalion small units with communications equipment, engineer, and other technical equipment is carried out directly from the regimental technical equipment dump.

103. Ration supply of the small units of the regiment is accomplished by a daily issue, at the battalion ration supply point, of one day's rations.

Battalion ration supply points supply small units with bread, hot food, tea, sugar, tobacco, matches, soap, and other items of issue and, in certain cases, with fuel [for heating purposes] and water.

The battalion (company) commander takes all steps to ensure that hot food is served in full and to all personnel at the appointed time.

Hot food from the battalion ration supply points is delivered in kitchens as close as possible to the locations of small units, to a point designated by the company (battalion) commander; from here the food is distributed to small units in thermos [cans] or covered containers and is apportioned into individual mess tins.

~~SECRET~~

The time for the receipt of hot food by personnel is established by the regimental (battalion) commander; under battle conditions, hot food is generally served twice a day, primarily at night.

Personnel located directly in combat formation are issued a part of the daily norm of food in dry form for consumption in the intervals between the receipt of hot food.

Dry rations are provided to small units in the event that it is impossible to deliver hot food from the battalion ration supply point to the small units. In this case, the preparation of hot food is organized in pots or buckets by the troops themselves.

104. Cavalry regiment small units are usually provided with ammunition, rations, forage, and other supplies through troop ammunition supply points and ration supply points in the same way as the infantry regiment.

105. The receipt and distribution to personnel of all types of supplies, except money and medical-sanitary supplies, is carried out by the quartermaster sergeant, and, where there is no quartermaster sergeant, it is carried out by the first sergeants of small units on the orders of their commanders.

Weapons are distributed to noncommissioned officers and soldiers by the commanders of small units or by first sergeants on receipt.

The clothing of personnel, depending upon its wear, is exchanged on the requisitions of small unit commanders.

Soldiers and noncommissioned officers are given their monetary allowances directly by the small unit commanders. Officers receive their monetary allowances from the regimental chief of finance.

Sanitation instructors of small units receive and distribute to personnel medical-sanitation equipment.

106. Transportable reserves of supplies are created in units and small units.

These supplies are constantly replenished and are kept in combat vehicles, at the guns (mortars, machine guns), on the soldiers and noncommissioned officers, and also in the transport of the units and small units.

Transportable reserves of supplies in the regiment are kept at established levels.

Reserves of supplies of units (small units) may be increased or decreased by the consent of the division commander, depending upon the circumstances and on the mission being executed.

107. Transportable reserves are either expendable stocks or emergency reserves. The emergency reserves are used in exceptional cases and only with the consent of the regimental commander, and, in the case of ammunition, with the consent of the battalion commander.

Emergency reserves consist of a fixed quantity of ammunition and rations in the direct possession of soldiers and noncommissioned officers, of grain

~~SECRET~~

forage in saddle bags (in carts), of part of the ammunition carried along with machine guns, guns, mortars, and in combat vehicles, and of part of the fuel which is contained in the tanks of combat and transport vehicles.

108. The regimental deputy commander for supply is directly responsible for the timely supply of materiel to small units of the regiment.

The commander of a small unit is responsible for supplying every soldier and noncommissioned officer and also vehicles and horses.

The supply of materiel from regimental dumps and regimental ammunition supply points to the battalions and to the regimental artillery firing positions is made by regimental transport and regimental artillery transport, and from the battalion ammunition supply point and ration supply point to small units by battalion transport.

In cases of necessity, the supply of materiel can be made by regimental transport directly to the small units of the battalion.

The supply of ammunition, fuel, and lubricating materials in the tank (tank-and-self-propelled) regiment is made by regimental transport directly to the combat vehicles.

Empty transport returning to the rear is used primarily for evacuating the wounded and sick.

Fuel and lubricating materials for servicing combat and transport vehicles are brought up to battalions and batteries. The rest of the small units of the regiment have their vehicles serviced with fuel and lubricating materials at the regimental dump. The commanders of small units are responsible for the timely servicing of vehicles with fuel and lubricants.

109. Replenishing tanks and self-propelled artillery with ammunition, servicing them with fuel and lubricating materials, and necessary repairs to them are done, as a rule, at night, after the execution of the mission of the day and at points in covered areas designated by the regimental (battalion) commander. Depending on the situation and the mission being carried out, tanks and self-propelled artillery which have to be replenished with ammunition and serviced with fuel are withdrawn by platoons or individually, and are disposed in a dispersed manner, in readiness for defense.

During combat, replenishing tanks and self-propelled artillery with ammunition and servicing them with fuel and lubricating materials are done in the combat formations behind cover by delivering ammunition and fuel directly to the combat vehicles without having to move them to the rear area.

In urgent cases, the commander of a tank small unit, not waiting for deliveries from the rear area, is responsible for redistributing among combat vehicles their remaining ammunition, fuel, and lubricating materials. In necessary cases, the delivery of ammunition, fuel, and lubricating materials to the combat formations of tanks and self-propelled artillery can be carried out by combat vehicles.

110. Regimental and battalion aid stations are deployed at such a distance from the front line as to be able to give timely medical aid to the

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

wounded and the sick and to evacuate them from the field of battle. When in the departure position for an attack, the regimental aid station is up to 3 kilometers from the front line and the battalion aid station is up to 1 kilometer. When in the defense, the aid station is up to 8 kilometers from the front line and the battalion aid station is up to 3 kilometers. In the cavalry regiment, the aid station is deployed at a distance from the front line of up to 3 kilometers when in the departure position for an attack and up to 4 kilometers when in the defense.

All commanders and medical personnel of the regiment (battalion) are responsible for taking measures to ensure that the wounded are transported to the battalion and regimental aid stations as soon as possible.

First aid to the wounded on the field of battle is administered by sanitation instructions and aid men. Aid men carry the severely wounded, with their weapons, from the field of battle to a point designated by the company commander.

Aid men-litter bearers, sent out to the companies by the battalion aid station, carry out the severely wounded, with their personal weapons, from the company area to the battalion aid station (or to a medical vehicle loading point).

The slightly wounded, if they cannot carry on in combat, proceed, carrying their own weapons, to the battalion or regimental aid station with the permission of the platoon (company) commander.

Medical technician aid is given to the wounded and sick at the battalion aid station, where their evacuation to the regimental aid station by regimental transport is organized; the slightly wounded can go on foot in organized formations, under command, with their own personal weapons, which they give up at the regimental aid station.

Professional medical attention is given to the wounded and sick at the regimental aid station. The sick and wounded are then evacuated to the division aid station by division transport.

Units and small units of special troops evacuate their wounded and sick from the field of battle, as a rule, with their own transport, to the battalion and regimental aid stations of rifle (motorized rifle, mechanized, tank, cavalry) units.

Attached and supporting units and small units of artillery and tanks (self-propelled artillery) evacuate their wounded and sick to their own aid stations or to the nearest aid stations of combined arms units (small units).

111. The burial of those killed in action and of others who have died is organized by the regimental deputy commander for supply in an established manner. A small unit, under the command of an officer, is designated for burying the dead. Before burial, identification of those killed in action is made according to documents found on them. Commanders of small units report through channels every man who has been killed in action (who has died). Reports are made according to a strict, established form. The regimental

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



headquarters keeps an accurate account of personnel killed in action (or of those who died), the place of burial, and promptly communicates this information to the appropriate military commissariats.

112. The repair of unserviceable and damaged combat and transport vehicles is made by the crews (drivers) or by regimental (battalion) repair shops at the spot where they were damaged. If it is impossible to make repairs on the spot, the vehicles are evacuated for repair to the regimental and division collecting points for wrecked vehicles or to repair shops.

The regimental commander gives instructions for the organization of the collecting point for wrecked vehicles, which is disposed in a concealed location close to supply and evacuation routes.

At the collecting point for wrecked vehicles, the following activities take place: an inspection, the sorting of knocked-out vehicles and of the armament and equipment found on them, preparations for further evacuation of those vehicles which cannot be repaired on the spot, and their transfer to the regimental repair shop or to the division collection point for wrecked vehicles.

The evacuation from the regiment of unserviceable and knocked-out combat and transport vehicles, armament (except artillery materiel), and other technical equipment is carried out by division means. Unserviceable artillery materiel is evacuated, as a rule, by the organic artillery prime movers of the small units.

The repair of armament, communications equipment, and other technical equipment in small units is done by the repairmen of these small units or by repairmen detailed from the regimental (battalion) repair shops.

If repairs in small units are not feasible, then the armament, communications equipment, and other technical equipment is evacuated for repair to the regimental or division repair shops.

113. The regimental veterinary hospital, which is deployed at a distance of up to 6 kilometers from the front line when in the departure position for an attack, and up to 10 kilometers when in the defense, gives veterinary aid to wounded and sick horses and other animals.

The removal of wounded and sick horses and other animals from the field of battle to the regimental veterinary hospital is carried out on the instructions of commanders of small units.

The care of horses and other animals left for treatment in regimental veterinary hospitals is carried out by one soldier for every three 3 horses; these men are detailed on the instructions of the regimental commander.

The evacuation of wounded and sick horses and other animals from the regimental veterinary hospital to the division veterinary hospital is carried out by regimental facilities; and from cavalry regiments, by the facilities of the division veterinary hospital.

~~SECRET~~

In the cavalry regiment, a forward veterinary point is set up for giving timely first aid to wounded and sick horses and for evacuating them from the veterinary stations of the cavalary troops (batteries). The regimental veterinary hospital establishes the forward veterinary point in the area where the horseholders and horses are disposed.

114. Prisoners-of-war are convoyed from small units to the regimental, or directly to the division, prisoner-of-war collecting point.

The regimental prisoner-of-war collecting point is organized by the regimental staff, usually by using personnel from the regimental headquarters small unit komendantskoye podrazdeleniye.

115. Rear service small units organize and carry out the security and defense of their dispositions, as a rule, with their own men and materiel. When necessary for the security and defense of regimental dumps and ammunition supply points, and also for carrying out loading-unloading operations and for the security of transport enroute during the threat of enemy ground attack, necessary small units are detailed for this purpose on the instruction of the regimental (battalion) commander.

116. On the basis of the decision of the regimental commander and of the division commander's order for the rear, a regimental order or instruction for the rear is issued.

The regimental order for the rear gives instructions on:

- the place and time for deploying division rear service units and installations, and the order of their displacement in the course of battle;
- the supply and evacuation routes;
- the boundary lines of the regimental rear area, or only the regimental boundary lines if the regimental rear area is not indicated;
- the time and place for deploying the small regimental rear service units, and the order of their displacement in the course of battle;
- by what time and to what extent to create reserves of supplies (by principal classes of supply) in small units and in regimental dumps;
- norms for the expenditure of supplies (by principal classes of supply) for each regimental small unit before the battle and on the first day of battle;
- the order and times for bringing up supplies to the small units;
- measures for giving prompt medical aid to, and for evacuating, the wounded and sick from the field of battle;
- the organization of the evacuation of unserviceable and wrecked combat and transport vehicles and armament;
- measures for giving prompt veterinary aid to, and for evacuating, wounded and sick horses and other animals from the field of battle;

~~SECRET~~

~~SECRET~~

- the organization of communications with the rear service small units;
- the organization of the security and defense of the rear service small units and the areas in which they are located;
- the place and time of disposing the rear command group;
- when and where to make reports concerning the rear.

The regimental deputy commander for supply works out the order for the rear, which is signed by the regimental commander, the chief of staff, and the regimental deputy commander for supply.

117. The regimental deputy commander for supply is responsible for the organization of the rear, for the supply of materiel to regimental small units by the supply services subordinate to him, and for bringing up all other types of supplies to regimental small units. The instructions by the regimental deputy commander for supply on questions of the organization of the rear are binding on all chiefs of services.

The regimental deputy commander for supply is responsible for:

- knowing the requirements for materiel of the small units according to supply services subordinate to him, promptly requisitioning supplies, and replenishing transportable reserves;
- supplying small units with rations, forage, clothing and footwear, fuel and lubricating materials, heating fuel, equipment for lighting purposes, and water, in areas where water is not obtainable; arranging a check of the quality of these supplies;
- organizing the bringing up of materiel according to requests made by the chiefs of services;
- organizing the reconnaissance and study of the area of future operations for locating the regimental rear service small units;
- organizing, in conjunction with the regimental engineer, the maintenance and servicing of the routes of supply and evacuation and, on the instructions of the chief of staff, organizing the control of traffic on these routes;
- organizing the location of regimental rear service small units;
- organizing the operations of subordinate rear service small units;
- organizing the security, defense, antichemical defense, and the camouflage of the regimental rear service small units;
- organizing bath and laundry services for regimental personnel;
- informing the regimental chief of staff of the status of the rear and of the basic measures concerning the organization and operations of the rear ;

~~SECRET~~

~~SECRET~~

- receiving from the regimental staff data on changes in the situation and in the composition of the regiment;

- informing the regimental deputy commander for technical affairs (chief of technical affairs), the regimental surgeon, the regimental veterinarian, and also the chief of artillery armament of the situation in the rear and of the receipt of instructions given by the regimental commander, and, in conjunction with them, preparing the order for the rear and working out measures for the technical and material insurance of the regiment;

- checking the supply of regimental small units according to classes of supplies, and taking measures to do away immediately with all apparent deficiencies;

- observing the prompt maintenance at strength of small units subordinate to him in terms of personnel, transport, horses, and authorized armament, and organizing their proper utilization;

- organizing the procurement, on the instructions of the division chief of the rear, of food, forage, fuel, and equipment from local means;

- promptly organizing the collection, on the field of battle, of Soviet and captured arms and equipment, and also accounting for, safeguarding, and evacuating them;

- making a timely calculation of the bringing up of materiel to regimental small units;

- organizing the collection of information regarding the material support of small units according to subordinate services of supply for inclusion in the reports for the rear;

- directing the combat, political, and special preparation of the personnel of subordinate supply services and of rear service small units;

- organizing the burial of those killed in action and those who have died.

118. The regimental deputy commander for technical affairs (chief of technical affairs) is directly responsible for organizing the maintenance of combat and transport vehicles and for their constant technical serviceability.

He is responsible for:

- knowing the availability and technical condition of combat and transport vehicles;

- organizing the proper technical use, servicing, and safeguarding of combat and transport vehicles;

- organizing the repair and evacuation of unserviceable combat and transport vehicles in the course of the battle;

- determining the reasons for the damages (breakdowns) to the vehicles, and taking measures to prevent them;

~~SECRET~~

~~SECRET~~

- checking the technical condition of vehicles, the expenditure of spare parts, and the proper filling out of technical documents;
- organizing the requisition, receipt, allotment, distribution, and account of vehicles, spare parts, instruments, and equipment;
- directing maintenance work in subordinate small units;
- organizing the timely deployment of collecting points for wrecked vehicles in the course of battle, and organizing their operations in conformance with the combat mission;
- checking the quality and expenditure of incoming fuel and lubricating materials;
- directing the technical training of the regimental personnel;
- informing the regimental chief of staff of the availability and the technical condition of combat and transport vehicles and of the progress of their repair and evacuation;
- informing the regimental deputy commander for supply of the needed quantity of fuel and lubricating materials;
- studying and generalizing the experience gained in the maintenance of combat and transport vehicles and disseminating this experience to the small units.

119. Regimental chiefs of services directly manage the supply and servicing of small units, each according to his specialty.

They are responsible for:

- checking the supply of the regimental small units according to class of supply, and taking measures to eliminate immediately all disclosed shortcomings;
- reporting to the regimental deputy commander for supply concerning the status of supply of the small units with the materiel which he controls, and presenting him with requests for the supply of the small units with items required by them;
- presenting to the corresponding chiefs of services of the division data on the amount on hand and the expenditure of materiel which they handle, and presenting requests for releasing and shipping items of supply;
- organizing the maintenance of combat equipment according to their specialty;
- receiving from regimental headquarters necessary data on changes in the situation and on the composition of the regiment;
- taking part in the development of the appropriate point of the order for the rear and of other documents according to their specialty.

~~SECRET~~

-54-

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

120. The regimental surgeon directs the medical care of the regimental personnel.

He is responsible for:

- organizing and ensuring prompt medical aid on the field of battle to the wounded, sick, and those afflicted by chemical agents, and evacuating them to battalion and regimental aid stations;
- directing the medical operations of regimental and battalion aid stations;
- ensuring the timely development of the operations of battalion and regimental aid stations, and displacing them in the course of battle;
- organizing sanitation-hygienic and antiepidemic measures in the regimental small units;
- checking the bath and laundry servicing of regimental personnel;
- organizing reconnaissance of the sanitary conditions of the area of operations of the troops;
- promptly supplying regimental small units and the regimental and battalion aid stations with medicines, bandaging materials, and other medical-sanitation items;
- checking the quality of food served to personnel, and also checking the condition of water sources being used;
- organizing the training of personnel in the rules of the care of health in field conditions and in the rules of self aid and mutual aid if wounded or afflicted by poisonous agents.

121. The regimental senior veterinarian directs the veterinary care of horses and other animals.

He is responsible for:

- organizing and ensuring prompt veterinary aid to wounded, sick, and gassed horses and other animals, and treating them;
- ensuring the prompt setting up of a regimental veterinary hospital and a forward veterinary point, and displacing them in the course of the battle;
- directing the medical work of the regimental veterinary hospital, and checking the operations of the forward veterinary point;
- carrying out a constant check on the quality of forage and feed norms; on the feeding, watering, and working of horses; on their care; on the correctness and timeliness of their shoeing; and on the condition and correctness of adjustment of harnesses and equipment;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

- organizing the reconnaissance of veterinary conditions in the area of impending operations, taking veterinary-prophylactic and antiepidemic measures, and also taking measures, in conjunction with the regimental chief of chemical service, for antichemical protection of horses and other animals;

- promptly supplying regimental small units and regimental veterinary hospitals with veterinary equipment;

- carrying out a veterinary inspection of livestock and of its slaughter;

- organizing and checking the timely disposal of slain horses and other animals;

- organizing the training of personnel in the rules of the proper care of horses and the rendering of first aid to them when wounded or gassed.

122. The chief of artillery armament of the regiment directs the supplying of regimental small units with artillery armament, ammunition, and other artillery equipment, and also directly organizes the maintenance of artillery armament.

He is responsible for:

- promptly resupplying regimental small units with materiel in short supply, ammunition, spare parts, combat instruments, and lubricating and wiping materials;

- organizing the operations of the artillery repair workshop;

- ensuring the timely deployment and displacement, in the course of battle, of the regimental ammunition supply point, and personally directing its operations;

- organizing the timely turning in, by small regimental units, of unserviceable arms, expended cartridge cases, and packing materials;

- displacing the regimental ammunition supply point without leaving ammunition, expended cartridge cases, and packing materials in the area evacuated;

- maintaining an exact accounting of the expenditure of and the need for ammunition, of armament lost in battle, and informing the chief of artillery of the regiment of these matters;

- checking the technical state of equipment and combat instruments in the small units of the regiment;

- organizing the collection, on the field of battle, of armament, and its repair and utilization.

123. The battalion commander personally, and with the aid of his staff, organizes the operations of the rear service small units of the battalion.

On the basis of instructions by the regimental commander or the order for the rear, the battalion commander indicates to his small unit

~~SECRET~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

commanders:

- the locations of the regimental rear service small units and supply routes;
- the locations of and the time for deploying the battalion ammunition supply point, the battalion aid station, the battalion supply point, and the automotive repair shop, and the order of displacing them in the course of battle;
- the order of resupplying small units with ammunition, fuel, lubricating materials, rations, and forage;
- norms for the expenditure of ammunition, fuel, and lubricating materials in the small units;
- the method of evacuation of wounded and sick from the field of battle to the battalion aid station;
- the method of evacuation of sick and wounded horses;
- the order of repair and evacuation of unserviceable armament, combat equipment, transport, and property;
- the order of feeding personnel, and the time for serving hot food;
- the method of maintaining communications with rear service small units.

124. The deputy battalion commander for technical affairs (battalion automotive technician) is directly responsible for the organization of the maintenance of combat and transport vehicles and for keeping them in a constant state of technical usefulness.

He is responsible for:

- knowing the availability and technical condition of combat and transport vehicles;
- personally directing the technical servicing and repair of combat and transport vehicles;
- organizing the evacuation of unserviceable combat and transport vehicles in the course of battle;
- directing the disposition and displacement of small repair units in the course of battle, and also the organization of their security and defense;
- directing the technical instruction of drivers (chauffeurs) and other automotive (tank) specialists;
- promptly informing the battalion commander and the regimental deputy commander for technical affairs of the availability and technical state of combat and transport vehicles.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

125. The commander of the battalion supply platoon is responsible for promptly supplying to battalion small units ammunition, fuel and lubricating materials, chemical warfare equipment, rations, forage, heating fuel, lighting equipment, and water where it is unavailable.

He is responsible for:

- promptly deploying the battalion ammunition supply point and the battalion supply point, and displacing them in the course of battle;
- organizing the supply of ammunition to company ammunition supply points and to artillery (mortar) firing positions;
- organizing the preparation, the delivery, and the issuance to the small units of hot food and tea;
- having information of the status of supply to small battalion units of ammunition, fuel and lubricants, rations, and forage;
- promptly informing the battalion commander, the deputy regimental commander for supply, and the chief of artillery armament of the necessity for replenishing reserves of ammunition, fuel, and lubricants; informing the commander immediately of the expenditure by the small units of half of their available supplies of ammunition, fuel, and lubricants in the course of battle;
- organizing the security, defense, and camouflage of battalion supply points and ammunition supply points.

126. The senior battalion medical assistant [fel'dsher] is responsible for the medical care of battalion personnel and for the operations of the battalion aid station.

He is responsible for:

- directing the work of the personnel of the battalion aid station and of the sanitary instructors of the companies;
- promptly setting up the operations of the battalion aid station, and displacing it, in the course of battle, behind the advancing companies;
- organizing the prompt removal of the wounded, or those affected by poisonous agents, from the field of battle and their evacuation to battalion aid stations;
- personally giving prompt medical aid to the wounded, sick, and those affected by poisonous agents, who have reached the battalion aid station;
- checking the quality of the food furnished to personnel, checking the state of water sources in the battalion area of operations, and checking the water discipline of the battalion personnel;
- carrying out sanitation hygienic, and antiepidemic measures among battalion personnel;
- promptly supplying the companies and the battalion aid station with medicines, bandaging materials, and other medical-sanitary stocks.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

## Chapter 6

### OFFENSIVE COMBAT

#### 1. GENERAL PRINCIPLES

127. The main goal of offensive combat is the complete destruction of the enemy.

This result is obtained by striking the enemy with heavy fire of all kinds, and by a decisive attack, with the subsequent encirclement and destruction or capture of enemy personnel and the seizure of his materiel.

128. Success in offensive combat is attained not only by a superiority over the enemy in men and materiel, but primarily by the skillful organization and conduct of combat, which is assured by:

- well-organized reconnaissance of all types;
- the skillful use of men and materiel in battle;
- the concealed occupation of the departure position for the attack and adequate air cover for regimental (battalion) small units;
- the surprise and swiftness of the attack;
- organized cooperation among regimental (battalion) small units, with the attached and supporting small units (units), and with adjacent units during the execution of assigned missions;
- the maneuver of fire, personnel, and materiel during a battle;
- engineer preparation of the departure area for the attack;
- firm and continuous control of the regimental (battalion) small units, and the attached and supporting small units (units) in battle;
- the preparation of the regimental (battalion) small units with respect to the peculiarities of the forthcoming battle;
- political support of the operations of the regiment (battalion);
- the material and technical support of small units;
- the timely consolidation of gains.

129. If the enemy has no open flanks, the attack by the regiment (battalion) begins with a breakthrough of his defense.

The width of the breakthrough sector, the direction of the main blow, and the depth of the regiment's (battalion's) combat missions are determined by the mission assigned by the division (regimental) commander, the scheme of operations, the enemy forces and the tenacity of his defense, the personnel and materiel of the regiment (battalion), and the character of the terrain.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

When attacking the enemy's prepared defense, a rifle regiment attacking in the main direction may be assigned a breakthrough sector up to two kilometers in width; a rifle battalion, up to one kilometer.

The immediate mission of a rifle regiment is usually to seize the position held by the enemy's regimental reserves. The subsequent mission is to capture the position held by the enemy's division reserves. The mission of the day is to develop the breakthrough, destroy enemy reserves, and seize the assigned sector of the enemy's second defensive zone throughout its entire depth.

The immediate mission of the rifle regiment of the second echelon of a division usually consists in the completion of the breakthrough of the enemy's main defensive zone, in coordination with the units of the first echelon; the subsequent mission is to develop the breakthrough, destroy the enemy's reserves, and seize the assigned sector of the enemy's second defensive zone throughout its entire depth.

The immediate mission of a rifle battalion is the seizure of the first position. The subsequent mission is the seizure of the position of the enemy's regimental reserves. On accomplishing the subsequent mission, the battalion develops the attack in the depths of the defense; for this purpose, the battalion is assigned new missions in the depths of the enemy defense.

The immediate mission of the rifle battalion of the second echelon of the regiment is usually to seize a sector of the position held by the enemy's division reserves; subsequently, the battalion is given the mission of developing the attack in the depths of the enemy defense.

The company is assigned a visible objective for the assault, situated on the first position of the enemy defense, and the direction of further attack.

130. In an attack against a prepared enemy defense, the combat formation of the regiment is formed in two echelons or in one.

In the same situation, the rifle (motorized rifle) battalion is formed in two echelons or in one.

131. Regimental artillery groups are formed for the regiments of both the first and the second echelons of the division.

The regimental commander assigns several of the artillery battalions of the regimental artillery group for the support of the rifle battalions. In the course of battle, the artillery battalions assigned to support the rifle battalions may be subordinated to the rifle battalion commanders. These artillery battalions are called on to take part in the artillery preparation for an attack; when there is insufficient artillery, they are also used to lay down a barrage or successive concentrations of fire to a depth of up to 1.5 kilometers.

Before the battalion of the regiment's second echelon is committed to battle, the artillery battalions assigned to support it are employed to support the battalion of the first echelon which is attacking in the direction in which the battalion of the second echelon will be committed.

After the artillery battalions have been reassigned to the rifle (motorized infantry) battalions, the regimental commander should have under his direct command one to two battalions.

~~SECRET~~

The commander of the regimental artillery group must assure centralized fire direction for the entire group.

Firing positions of the regimental artillery group are usually selected as close as possible to the enemy main line of resistance.

Regimental and battalion artillery are not included in the composition of the regimental artillery group, but are employed as accompanying artillery on orders from the regimental (battalion) commander.

On orders of a senior officer, the regimental and battalion mortars may be called on to participate in the artillery preparation for an attack. In this event the commander of the regimental artillery group plans their fire.

The regimental and battalion mortars which have been drawn from the regiments of the second (third) echelon of the division during the artillery preparation for an attack are employed as part of the regimental artillery groups of the regiments of the first echelon.

The regimental artillery groups of the regiments of the second echelons of the divisions participate in the artillery preparation for the attack as part of the division artillery groups; and until these regiments are committed to battle, they support the attack of the regiments of the first echelon.

132. During an attack, the regimental artillery group performs the following missions:

- during the artillery preparation for the attack, it neutralizes and destroys enemy personnel and weapons in emplacements, trenches, communication trenches, and also in strong points; neutralizes and destroys the enemy's antitank guns, tanks, and self-propelled artillery; blinds and destroys observation posts; destroys individual sectors of trenches and communication trenches, and other defensive installations; cuts passages through obstacles; and, when necessary, can be called on to conduct counterbattery fire against the enemy's artillery and mortar batteries;

- during the artillery support of the attack, it supports infantry and tank attacks with a barrage or successive concentrations of fire; it neutralizes and destroys surviving and newly disclosed enemy weapons; and interdicts enemy counterattacks, especially on the flanks;

- in the period of the artillery accompaniment of the infantry and tanks during combat in the depth of the enemy's defense, it accompanies with its fire the infantry and tank attack, neutralizing and destroying enemy personnel and weapons in strong points and enemy reserves; by the use of smoke shells and mines it blinds the enemy's weapons and observation posts; it destroys and neutralizes the enemy in his concentration areas; it beats off the counterattacks of enemy infantry and tanks; it supports the commitment of the second echelons (reserves) to battle; it covers with its fire the boundaries and flanks; it protects the consolidation of the captured areas; it hinders the enemy withdrawal and his consolidation on intermediate lines.

133. During the artillery preparation for an attack, the fire of guns and self-propelled artillery, assigned for direct fire, takes on great significance.

Guns and self-propelled artillery assigned for direct fire are advantageous in destroying antitank guns, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and other weapons,

~~SECRET~~

especially on the main-line of resistance. They destroy observation posts, individual sectors of trenches and communication trenches, buildings adapted for defense, and, in case of necessity, they blast passages through obstacles.

Direct fire weapons are detailed from regimental and battalion artillery, from small units of self-propelled artillery, and from attached antitank and division artillery. When needed, guns of heavier caliber are detailed. The number and caliber of guns (self-propelled artillery) detailed for direct fire depend on the availability and character of reconnoitered targets, the character of the terrain, and the conditions of observation and adjustment of fire. Each gun is capable of destroying or damaging one or two targets during the artillery preparation. Depending on the character and importance of the targets, two guns can be assigned to one target.

All guns detailed for direct fire, including very heavy ones, are subordinate to the regimental (battalion) commander in whose sector they are operating. The fire of weapons detailed for direct fire is planned by the regimental artillery commander on the basis of missions assigned by the division artillery commander and the regimental commander. The regimental artillery commander coordinates this fire with the commander of the regimental artillery group.

A fire plan is drawn up by the regimental chief of artillery in order to plan the fire of the guns detailed for direct fire.

134. Accompanying artillery is assigned for the direct accompaniment of the attacking infantry and tanks. Up to one artillery battalion is attached to a rifle battalion as accompanying artillery. This artillery battalion is reassigned to the companies by platoons or by batteries. Battalion and regimental artillery, small units of the rifle regiment's self-propelled artillery, and a part of the antitank and division artillery attached to the regiment are employed as accompanying artillery. Usually included in the small units of the first echelon are self-propelled artillery and guns with prime movers for cross-country performance.

During the period of the artillery preparation for the attack, accompanying artillery and artillery detailed to the regimental artillery-antitank reserve are employed for direct fire.

During an attack and combat in the depth of the enemy defense, the platoons and batteries of accompanying artillery, advancing in the combat formations of the companies, destroy antitank guns, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and any other enemy weapons hindering the advance of the infantry and tanks.

135. In offensive combat, close support tanks support the advancing infantry by fire and shock action, destroying enemy personnel, weapons, tanks, and clearing paths through wire entanglements.

For an attack on a prepared defense, the regimental commander usually attaches tanks and self-propelled artillery to the battalions of the first echelon for their close support. Two or three tank companies and one or two batteries (companies) of self-propelled artillery may be attached to a battalion of the first echelon operating in the direction of the main effort. Where there is a sufficient number of tanks, some of them are attached to the battalion of the second echelon.

As a rule, the heavy tanks and self-propelled artillery attached to the regiment are employed to accompany the medium tanks.

Tanks are usually attached to rifle companies for an attack in a city, forest, or hilly terrain, and when overrunning an enemy security zone. Tanks are also included in assault groups.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

136. During preparations for an attack, sapper small units are employed under centralized control to conduct engineer reconnaissance, clear the departure area of mines, construct command and observation posts, and prepare roads and cross-country routes of march. They may be called on to clear passages through our own obstacles and those lying in front of the enemy main line of resistance. At the beginning of the attack, some of the sapper small units are reassigned to battalion commanders to participate in reconnaissance, to clear away obstacles, to lay out cross-country routes through the enemy's main line of resistance and in the depth of his defense, and to construct obstacles during the consolidation of captured lines.

137. Small units of light flamethrowers, which are attached to the regiment, are, as a rule, reassigned to battalion commanders to reinforce companies; they advance with the attacking small units of infantry, destroying enemy personnel in trenches and shelters.

Small units of flamethrowing tanks attached to a regiment (battalion) are employed with the infantry close support tanks. They attack directly in front of the infantry, without becoming separated from their combat formations.

In preparation for and during an attack, smoke is employed under centralized control according to the plan of a senior officer. During fighting in the depth of the enemy defense, the regiment (battalion), depending on the situation, may use smoke independently to support the maneuver of small units, to indicate targets, to designate its own position, and to conceal the second echelon when it is committed to battle.

In offensive combat the small regimental chemical warfare unit performs chemical warfare observation and reconnaissance, and warns of an enemy chemical attack.

Chemical warfare small units may be attached to the regiment to decontaminate a contaminated area, weapons, equipment, and transport.

## 2. ORGANIZATION OF OFFENSIVE COMBAT

138. The sequence of work of a regimental (battalion) commander in organizing an attack is determined in each instance by the mission, the character of the terrain, and the time factor.

When there is sufficient time to organize an attack, the regimental (battalion) commander usually conducts his work on the terrain in the following order:

- he conducts reconnaissance and makes a decision;
- he issues a combat order;
- he issues orders for combat, political, engineer, material, and technical support, and other necessary orders;
- he grants time to the commanders of battalions (companies) and the commanders of attached and supporting units (small units) to familiarize themselves with the mission, to evaluate the situation, and to conduct reconnaissance in their particular directions; assigns them the time and meeting places for reporting on the results of the work carried out;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- he coordinates the activities of the regiment (battalion) with adjacent units and with those units which will be operating in the regimental zone of attack;

- he listens to the decisions made by the battalion (company) commanders and further details their missions;

- he organizes coordination.

139. In conducting reconnaissance, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- orient on the terrain those taking part in reconnaissance, assign reference points, indicate the conventional names for local objects, and acquaint the officers with the regiment's (battalion's) combat mission;

- indicate the enemy main line of resistance, the configuration of the trenches and communication trenches, the enemy combat formation, the boundaries and flanks of enemy units and small units; point out the location of the strong points and the location in these strong points of antitank guns, tanks, and other weapons, the disposition of the enemy's nearest reserves and the probable directions of enemy counterattacks, the character of the defense installations, obstacles, and natural barriers; deduce which places in the enemy defenses are the strongest and which are the weakest, which strong points should be taken in first priority so as to break down the tenacity of the enemy defense;

- study the terrain lying in front of the main line of resistance, in the depth of the enemy defense, and in the departure area for the attack;

- clarify the missions to be performed by the artillery and aircraft in the regimental (battalion) sector on orders from the senior officer;

- determine the most suitable sectors of the terrain for a tank attack;

- determine the direction of the main effort, the organization of the combat formation, and outline the combat missions for the regimental (battalion) small units;

- indicate to battalions departure areas for the attack (to companies - departure positions) and the firing positions for the accompanying artillery and the small mortar units;

- determine (further detail) the deployment lines (departure positions) of the tanks and self-propelled artillery;

- further detail the firing positions of the regimental artillery group and indicate the area of disposition of the artillery-antitank reserve;

- select locations for command and observation posts;

- indicate the routes for the movement of the regiment (battalion) and attached small units for the occupation of the departure position, and the line up to which it is possible to move the small units in vehicles (armored personnel carriers), if this has not been indicated by a senior officer;

- indicate the area of disposition of vehicles (armored personnel carriers) to be used to transport the infantry;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

indicate the locations of passages through obstacles;

determine the character, scope, and order of carrying out the engineer preparation of the departure area and measures for the engineer support of the attack;

take into account facilities on hand and draw conclusions as to their employment in executing the mission.

140. In assigning combat missions, the regimental commander indicates:

to the commanders of the battalions of the first echelon:

- the attached and supporting small units;

- the departure area, the immediate and subsequent missions, and the direction of further attack;

- the missions for protecting the boundaries and flanks;

- the missions for antitank and antiaircraft defense;

- the boundaries with adjacent units;

to the commander of the battalion of the second echelon:

- the attached and supporting small units;

- the departure area, missions, the direction of attack, and the probable line of commitment;

- the missions for protecting the boundaries and flanks of the regiment;

- the missions for antitank and antiaircraft defense;

to the commander of the regimental artillery group:

- additional missions for the artillery group during the period of the artillery preparation and the artillery support of the attack, and also during the period when the artillery is accompanying the infantry and tanks during combat in the depth of the enemy defense;

- measures for breaking up a possible enemy counterattack;

- the distribution of artillery battalions for the support of [rifle] battalions;

- the number and manner of reassignment of artillery small units to the [rifle] battalions;

- the order of displacement of the artillery in the course of battle;

- the time of readiness to open fire;

to the chief of the regimental artillery:

- the missions and the manner of employment of the antitank and mortar batteries and of the regimental self-propelled artillery battery;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



- how many and which weapons to detail for direct fire, their missions and time of readiness to open fire;

- the area of the firing positions and observation posts of the regimental artillery and mortars, and the order of their occupation;

- the manner of employing battalion mortars during the artillery preparation for the attack;

to the commanders of small units of close support tanks and self-propelled artillery---the distribution of small units among the rifle battalions; the waiting area, if it has not been indicated by the division commander; the deployment lines (departure positions); the time for moving out to them; the time and manner of beginning the movement to the attack;

to the commander of the regimental reserve---composition, departure positions, method of displacement, and the mission of being prepared for action in the directions most seriously threatened;

to the commander of the artillery-antitank reserve---composition, location, missions, method of displacement, and deployment lines during combat;

to the commander of the march support detachment---composition, direction of movement, and missions;

to the commander of the antiaircraft machine gun (antiaircraft artillery) small unit---missions for covering the small units of the regiment from enemy air activity; firing positions; the direction and method of displacement of the small unit;

to the regimental engineer---missions and method of employment of small sapper units;

to the chief of the chemical warfare service---missions and method of employment of the chemical warfare and flamethrower small units;

to the chief of staff---the location of the command and observation posts and the axis of their displacement in combat; tasks for ensuring control, and the tasks of communications in the departure position and in the course of battle; the time of readiness of communications in the departure position.

141. In assigning combat missions, the battalion commander indicates:

to the commanders of the companies of the first echelon---attached and supporting small units, departure positions, the objective for the attack, and the direction of further advance; missions for protecting the boundaries and flanks, and for antitank and antiaircraft defense;

to the commander of the company of the second echelon---attached and supporting small units, the departure position, the mission and direction of attack, the probable line of commitment, and missions for protecting the flanks of the battalion; and missions for antitank and antiaircraft defense;

to the commanders of the machine-gun and mortar companies and to the commander of the battalion battery---missions for the support of the rifle companies, targets for neutralization or destruction during the artillery preparation for the attack and during the attack, firing positions, the method of displacement, and subordination;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

to the commander of the antiaircraft machine-gun small unit---missions for covering the battalion from enemy air attacks, firing positions, the direction and method of displacement of the small unit;

to the commanders of small units of attached artillery---missions and method of displacement;

to the commander of the small unit of supporting artillery---additional targets for neutralization and destruction;

to commanders of small units of close support tanks and self-propelled artillery---the method of support of the rifle companies, missions, the direction of attack and of further advance, the method of support of the tanks and self-propelled artillery by artillery (mortar) fire, who will make passages through our own and enemy obstacles and where;

to the chief of staff---the location of the commander's observation post and the axis of its displacement during combat; tasks and method of organizing communications in the departure position and during the course of battle; the time of readiness of communications in the departure position.

142. Commanders of tank and self-propelled (tank, heavy tank and self-propelled) regiments, tank battalions, and battalions (artillery battalions) of self-propelled artillery, when employing small units of the regiment (battalion, artillery battalion) for the close support of infantry, must:

- promptly organize the preparation of equipment for combat;
- issue combat instructions for the forthcoming battle to commanders of small units;
- know the combat missions which have to be carried out by each of their small units, and the method of their coordination with the artillery, rifle (motorized rifle), and sapper small units;
- ascertain how well the small unit commanders comprehend their combat missions;
- assist commanders of rifle (motorized rifle) units (small units) in the proper employment of the tanks and self-propelled artillery attached to them;
- organize the timely movement of the small units from the waiting area to the line of deployment (departure positions);
- organize uninterrupted communications with the small units, and check on the timely execution of the missions assigned them;
- be ready to unite the regiment (battalion, artillery battalion) for operations as an entity;
- organize the material and technical supply of the small units.

During the course of battle the regimental (battalion, artillery battalion) commander maintains constant contact with his small units, verifies their timely execution of combat missions, and carries out their material and technical support.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

143. Combat instructions of commanders of tank and self-propelled (tank, heavy tank and self-propelled) regiments, tank battalions and battalions (artillery battalions) of self-propelled artillery, small units of which are attached for the close support of the infantry, indicate:

- information on the enemy;
- the allocation of small units (which small units and to whom they are attached, where and when to report to their commanders to receive their combat missions);
- the manner of movement from the waiting area to the line of deployment (departure positions);
- the order of bringing mine-clearing devices to combat readiness;
- missions for antitank and antiaircraft defense, and for protection against chemical attack during the period prior to arrival at the deployment line (departure positions);
- the location of their command (observation) posts and the direction of their displacement;
- the method of maintaining communications with the small units during the course of battle;
- the signal for the movement of the small units to the rallying area of the regiment (battalion, artillery battalion).

In addition to the combat instruction, orders pertaining to the organization of material and technical support are also issued.

144. When during the course of battle it becomes necessary to combine the close support tanks and the self-propelled artillery for the execution of new missions, a rallying area for the small units of the tank and self-propelled (heavy tank and self-propelled) regiment, and the tank battalion of the mechanized regiment is designated on the instructions of the division (regimental) commander.

A rallying area is so selected as to enable the tanks and the self-propelled artillery to rally there during the course of the forward movement of the combat formations, without having to pull them back. Tank and self-propelled artillery small units move into the rallying area on a prearranged signal, which is given on the instructions of the commanders of the supported battalions.

145. The maximum possible time must be given to the subordinate commanders for the organization of coordination. On an average, the time needed by a regimental commander for work on the terrain in organizing coordination for the breakthrough of a prepared enemy defense is not less than twenty-four hours; battalion and company commanders, together, should be given not less than twenty-four hours.

When coordination is being organized on the terrain, the regimental (battalion) commander synchronizes the operations of the small units of the regiment (battalion) with each other, with the operations of the attached and supporting small units (units), and also with adjacent units. In doing this, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- define in detail the combat mission of the regiment (battalion), and the sequence of its execution;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- define in detail the departure positions of the infantry; the firing positions of the guns and self-propelled artillery detailed for direct fire; the firing position areas of regimental (battalion) mortars; and the sequence and time when these positions are to be occupied;

- inform the small unit commanders concerning the operations of adjacent units, and the method of coordination with them;

- define in detail the objectives and the method of attack and the directions of further attack of the small units of the first echelon, coordinate the actions of these small units with each other and with adjacent units; in this respect, he must precisely establish the method of coordination of action between the infantry, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and artillery, and also on the boundaries and flanks;

- define in detail the number and locations of passages through obstacles, indicate the method of their designation, and coordinate the actions of the small units in surmounting the obstacles;

- define in detail the line of deployment (departure positions) of tanks in close support of the infantry and self-propelled artillery; the time when they will arrive at the line of deployment (departure positions), and also the time when the attack is to be launched; establish the order in which the tanks pass through the infantry formations, the method by which assistance is to be rendered to the tanks in surmounting obstacles and in neutralizing the antitank artillery and other weapons of the enemy which interfere with the advance of the tanks;

- announce the method of the artillery preparation for the attack; point out on the terrain the objectives (targets) which have to be neutralized and destroyed by artillery (mortars) during the artillery preparation for the attack, and the first and subsequent lines for the rolling barrage or sectors for successive concentrations of fire; define in detail the missions of artillery (mortars) for the accompaniment of the infantry and tanks engaged in combat in the depth of the enemy defense, and the missions for protecting the boundaries and the flanks; establish the manner of reallocation of the small units of the regimental artillery group to battalions (companies);

- define in detail the method of conducting small arms fire before and during the attack;

- define in detail the direction of the attack, the mission, the line and manner of commitment of the battalion of the second echelon; establish the manner of reallocation of the artillery, mortars, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper small units to the second echelon; define in detail the missions of the artillery, mortars, sapper small units, and small units of the first echelon for supporting the commitment of the second echelon (to the company of the second echelon, the battalion commander defines in detail its mission, direction of attack, and what weapons will support it during its commitment; determine the method of coordination, during the course of battle, between the small units of the first and second echelons;

- define in detail the mission of the artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment, its location, direction and order of displacement during the course of battle, and coordinate its operations with the operations of the small units of the regiment;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- announce the method of employment of smoke agents and small flamethrower units during the attack and during combat in the depth of the enemy defense, and coordinate the operations of the small units during an attack behind a smoke screen;

- point out lines (objectives) subject to consolidation during the course of the battle and the men and materiel designated for this purpose, and also the directions of possible counterattacks by the enemy and measures for repelling them;

- announce the missions of the air force and point out objects which it will demolish and neutralize in the zone of advance of the regiment during the period of the immediate air preparation for the attack and the period of air support (accompaniment) [of the attack];

- establish the manner of maintenance of communications, and announce the signals for: the attack; request for fire; shifting and cessation of fire; warning of the appearance of enemy planes, tanks, and chemical attack; recognition signals; target designation; communications between aviation and infantry; the designations of the front line of the forward small units to friendly aviation; and other signals;

- establish methods of target designation between the infantry, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and artillery.

146. To ensure coordination of operations with the regiment of the second echelon, the commander of a first-echelon regiment must:

- know the combat mission, direction of attack, and the probable line of commitment of the regiment of the second echelon; and the manner of passage of its small units through the combat formations of the regiment;

- establish the missions of the artillery for supporting the regiment of the second echelon during its commitment;

- define in detail the method of maintaining communications, and coordination signals.

147. In order to ensure synchronization of action with the mechanized (tank) regiment committed in the sector of the [rifle] regiment, the commander of the rifle regiment must:

- know the combat mission, direction of attack, and the line of commitment of the mechanized (tank) regiment; and the manner of passage of its small units through the combat formations of the regiment;

- assign missions to the artillery for supporting the mechanized (tank) regiment during its commitment;

- define in detail the method of maintaining communication with the mechanized (tank) regiment, and establish, if necessary, additional signals for coordination with it.

148. Communications in offensive combat are established along the axis of the command and observation posts.

Before the attack takes place, when the forces are still in the departure position, commanders control the regimental (battalion) small units and the attached (supporting) small units (units) by personal contact, wire communications, and mobile means of communication. In addition to the above, liaison officers are used [for this purpose] in the regiment.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

In a regiment (battalion), coordination communications are organized:

- between the attached and supporting artillery and the rifle (motorized rifle) small units;
- between regimental (battalion) small units and adjacent units;
- with infantry close support tanks and with self-propelled artillery;
- between the first and second echelons.

149. When organizing engineer support, the regimental commander must:

- assign missions for engineer reconnaissance;
- determine the scope of engineer works necessary to prepare the departure area for an attack, and establish the sequence and time limits for their execution;
- establish the number of passages through obstacles, and indicate their location, the sequence of making them, and the time when they will be ready;
- indicate the manner of engineer support of the infantry close support tanks and of self-propelled artillery while they are in the departure position and during the battle;
- indicate the directions of laying out cross-country routes of march and the measures for the preparation of roads for the movement of artillery and transport;
- determine the engineer measures for the consolidation of captured lines (objectives), and detail the necessary men and materiel for this purpose;
- indicate the method of employment of sapper small units and engineer equipment;
- determine the composition of the march support detachment, the direction of its movement, and its missions;
- determine the engineer measures for camouflage.

A battalion commander, in organizing adequate engineer support, must:

- establish the sequence and time of completion of engineer works for the preparation of the departure area for the attack;
- issue orders for the camouflage of small units, weapons, and defense installations;
- define in detail the locations of passages which are being cut in obstacles, point them out to the small unit commanders, and detail weapons to cover this work and the prepared passages;
- assign missions to the attached sapper small units.

150. When organizing an antitank defense, the regimental commander must:

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

- assign reconnaissance missions, establish observation, and inform subordinates of signals warning of the appearance of enemy tanks;

- determine the probable directions of counterattacks of enemy tanks, and indicate favorable lines for the deployment of antitank weapons;

- prepare a system of antitank fire in the departure position for the attack; and cover, with antitank obstacles, avenues of enemy tank approach;

- attach antitank artillery small units to the battalions and indicate the method of their employment;

- assign to the attached and supporting artillery missions for the preparation of concentrated fire on probable assembly areas and along lines of deployment of enemy tanks and self-propelled artillery, and also for the preparation of barrage fire in the directions from which they may counterattack;

- determine the means necessary for the organization of an antitank defense on lines selected for consolidation during the course of the battle;

- create a regimental artillery-antitank reserve, define its missions, and indicate its method of displacement and possible deployment lines.

To repel counterattacks by enemy tanks during the attack, the regimental commander must:

- quickly concentrate the fire of the regimental artillery group on a threatened direction and move some of the batteries up to direct fire positions;

- promptly deploy the artillery-antitank reserve, and move tanks and self-propelled artillery from the second echelon or reserves toward the threatened directions;

- organize antitank defense on occupied lines.

151. A battalion commander, when organizing an antitank defense, must:

- establish observation and inform subordinates of signals warning of the appearance of enemy tanks;

- plan the fire of antitank weapons in the departure position for the attack and during the course of battle, in order to repel enemy tanks;

- attach antitank weapons to the companies and indicate the method of their employment.

During the course of the battle, the battalion commander must utilize the fire of all antitank weapons to destroy counterattacking enemy tanks and self-propelled artillery.

152. In organizing an antiaircraft defense, a regimental (battalion) commander must:

~~SECRET~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- establish observation of the air, and inform subordinates as to signals warning of the appearance of enemy aircraft;
- determine what weapons are to be utilized for antiaircraft defense;
- indicate the method of opening and conducting fire by antiaircraft and other designated small units;
- order measures for the concealment and camouflage of the small units in the departure position for the attack.

During an enemy air attack in the course of the battle, the regiment (battalion) continues to fulfill its assigned mission, attempting to get as close to the enemy as possible. Antiaircraft and other designated small units conduct fire against low-flying enemy aircraft.

153. For purposes of chemical defense, a regimental (battalion) commander must:

- organize chemical observation and reconnaissance, and inform subordinates as to the signals warning of enemy chemical attack;
- point out measures to disrupt or weaken an enemy chemical attack;
- organize the outfitting of shelters against chemical attacks;
- promptly equip his small units with chemical defense means, and organize the utilization of local facilities to overcome contaminated sectors of the terrain;
- indicate the procedure for overcoming contaminated sectors of the terrain and fields of chemical land mines [fougasses];
- indicate protective measures against enemy flamethrower-incendiary weapons;
- indicate measures for the most expeditious elimination of the effects of a chemical attack.

154. Carefully organized, continuous reconnaissance is a most important factor for the successful outcome of offensive combat.

A regimental (battalion) commander, prior to beginning an offensive, and on the orders of the division (regimental) commander, organizes reconnaissance aimed at establishing:

- the enemy situation, his strength, composition, combat formation, combat effectiveness, and also new developments in his tactics and in the employment of his armament;
- the exact trace of the main line of resistance of the enemy's main (first) defensive zone; the number of trenches and communication trenches; the type of defense installations; and the presence of antitank, antipersonnel, and chemical obstacles forward of the main line of resistance and in the depth of the defense;
- the system of fire of all types in front of the main line of resistance of the enemy's main (first) defensive zone, and in its depth; the disposition of his

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



artillery, mortars, antitank guns; and also tanks, self-propelled artillery, and other weapons located in emplacements;

- the strong and weak spots in the enemy defense, the location of strong points and the intervals between them, of boundaries and flanks, and of command and observation posts;

- the daily routine of enemy troops (mealtimes, the transition from day duties to night duties and vice versa).

When organizing and conducting reconnaissance, it is of special importance to ascertain, the night before an attack is launched, the intentions of the enemy concerning the rearrangement of his grouping and the withdrawal of his forces from the forward edge of his defense.

155. For occupation of a departure position [iskhodnoye polozheniye] by the regiment (battalion), a departure area for the attack [iskhodnyy rayon dlya nastupleniya] is prepared.

A departure area for the attack of a regiment (battalion) must ensure the concealed disposition and dependable cover of small units and equipment from artillery fire and air attacks in the event of an enemy counterpreparation, and ensure the firmness of the regiment (battalion) in repulsing his attack.

Departure positions for the infantry and deployment lines (departure positions) for tanks and self-propelled artillery are created in the departure area, plus command and observation posts, firing positions for artillery and mortars, and routes ensuring the concealed approach, disposition, and rapid advance of the combat formations of the small attacking units.

The departure positions for the infantry consist of trenches, communication trenches, shelters, and firing positions for infantry weapons.

The engineer preparation of a departure area includes: the strengthening of existing trenches and communication trenches and the digging of new ones; a total clearance of mines from areas selected for artillery and mortar firing positions, and from deployment lines (departure positions) for tanks and self-propelled artillery, and also their preparation; the construction of command and observation posts; the preparation of roads and cross-country routes; and the concealment of combat formations from enemy ground and air observation.

156. A regiment (battalion) as a rule takes up its departure position for the attack at night, and concealed from enemy ground and air observation.

The occupation of the departure position for the attack usually takes place simultaneously with the relief of the units (small units) which previously operated in the area.

Artillery and mortars are the first to move into and to deploy on firing positions, and they are expected to be ready to open fire not later than twenty-four hours before the beginning of an attack. Guns detailed for direct fire usually occupy previously prepared firing positions the night before the attack is launched. They are placed in prepared cover and, with the beginning of the artillery preparation for the attack, are moved out to fire upon designated targets.

The infantry, together with its weapons, occupies departure positions during the twenty-four-hour period before the attack or the night before the attack. If the infantry occupies departure positions the night before the attack, it should have at least two hours of daylight before the attack to get acquainted with the terrain, enemy positions, and the objectives of the attack.

~~SECRET~~

The regiment of the second echelon occupies a departure position for the attack at a distance of two to three kilometers from the forward small units of the first echelon (in the cavalry, this distance is from one to two kilometers); a battalion — a distance of 500 to 1000 meters.

In the departure position for the attack, the small units must be in combat readiness to repel any possible enemy attack; combat security measures are strengthened; small units and weapons are carefully camouflaged; established rules of conduct at the main line of resistance and in the depths of a combat formation are rigidly enforced.

157. Infantry close support tanks and self-propelled artillery are concentrated in the waiting area by a specified time.

The waiting area vyzhidatelnyy rayon is designated, as a rule, by the division commander at a distance of six to eight kilometers from the enemy's main line of resistance.

Tank and self-propelled units and tank units and small units are dispersed in the waiting area and are carefully camouflaged.

From the waiting area, infantry close support tanks and self-propelled artillery move to the deployment line or to departure positions, which are designated by the commander of the rifle (mechanized, motorized rifle, cavalry) regiment.

Infantry close support tanks and self-propelled artillery move to the deployment line during the artillery preparation for the attack.

The deployment line is designated, depending on the terrain, one to three kilometers from the forward small units of the combat formation of the regiment.

During the advance to the deployment line, or on the line itself, infantry close support tanks and self-propelled artillery deploy in combat formation and, on a prearranged signal, move to the attack.

For the movement of tanks and self-propelled artillery to the deployment line, and for the attack on the enemy's main line of resistance, routes of movement are reconnoitered and staked out ahead of time. In order to maintain the designated direction during the attack, one or more clearly visible reference points in the depth of the enemy's first defensive position are assigned to each tank company assigned for the close support of the infantry.

When conditions exist which ensure complete concealment from enemy observation and interception/podslushivaniye, infantry close support tanks and self-propelled artillery may occupy departure positions on the night before the attack. In this case, departure positions are prepared in good time by personnel of the tank crews (self-propelled artillery) and sapper small units, at a distance of two to four kilometers from the main line of resistance. Routes for the movement of tanks and self-propelled artillery into the attack are reconnoitered and staked out. Control of movement is organized.

Self-propelled artillery detailed for direct fire is moved out to prepared firing positions during the period of artillery preparation for the attack.

Mine-sweeping devices are hitched to tanks in the waiting area or in departure positions.

~~SECRET~~

158. Passages through friendly obstacles which protect the main line of resistance of our defense are cut one to three days before an offensive, and through enemy obstacles in front of the main line of resistance of his defense usually the night before the attack. Cutting of passages through enemy obstacles with explosives is carried out during the period of the artillery preparation for the attack. In addition, with the beginning of an attack, passages through mined obstacles are cut by tanks equipped with mine-sweeping devices.

Passages through friendly and enemy obstacles are cut at the rate of one or two passages for a platoon of infantry close support tanks (self-propelled artillery).

In sectors where the infantry is attacking without tanks, passages are cut at the rate of one for each rifle platoon of the companies of the first echelon.

Commandant's posts staffed with sapper small units are established for the security of the passages and the support of the passage of the infantry and tanks through them. Prior to the beginning of the attack, fire cover for the passages through friendly obstacles is the responsibility of the artillery, mortars, and infantry weapons.

159. At the beginning of the enemy counterpreparation, artillery neutralizes enemy artillery and mortar batteries, and also his command and observation posts. Personnel of small units, apart from observers and crews of alert weapons, are concealed in trenches and other shelters. The regimental (battalion) commander and the commanders of small units, from their observation posts, observe the enemy operations and the disposition of their own small units.

The efforts of the enemy to reconnoiter in force the dispositions of a regiment (battalion) in the departure position are repulsed by the fire of specially detailed weapons of the small units of the first echelon of the regiment (battalion) and by artillery fire.

160. A combat outpost in the departure position for an attack is put out by the regiments operating in the first echelon. This usually consists of a platoon from each battalion of the first echelon (in the cavalry, it consists of a squad from each troop of the first echelon).

The positions of the combat outpost are strengthened with obstacles.

When the distance of the first echelon of the attacking units is not more than 300 meters from the main line of resistance of the enemy's defense, a combat outpost is not usually put out. In this case, in order to prevent a surprise enemy attack, small units (units) maintain increased observation of the enemy and are in constant readiness to repulse his attacks.

161. Motor vehicles (armored personnel carriers) intended for the transport of infantry personnel are pooled at battalion level under the command of a platoon leader of the regimental transportation company, and are dispersed in covered places concealed from enemy observation, usually at a distance of 2 to 4 kilometers from the enemy's main line of resistance.

Sometimes the motor vehicles (armored personnel carriers) intended for the transport of infantry personnel may be pooled at regimental level and dispersed in concealed places.

Artillery (mortar) prime movers and motor vehicles (armored personnel carriers) intended for the transport of machine guns, mortars, radios, and signal equipment

~~SECRET~~

are usually dispersed near their own small units, depending on conditions of the terrain.

Carefully camouflaged shelters are prepared for motor vehicles (armored personnel carriers) and prime movers.

Communication with motor vehicles (armored personnel carriers) is carried on by radio, mobile means of communication, and visual signals.

Motor vehicles (armored personnel carriers) intended for the transport of infantry personnel, commence moving forward on orders from the regimental (battalion) commander. The arrival of the transport at its small units is usually calculated for the time when the breakthrough of the enemy's first defensive zone is completed.

162. A regimental (battalion) commander, prior to the beginning of the offensive, is obliged to check:

- the knowledge of the commanders of small units of their missions, predetermined signals, and coordination procedure;
- the accuracy and timeliness of the occupation of departure positions by the small units;
- the readiness of weapons for opening fire;
- the provision of the small units with ammunition, fuel and lubricants, signal equipment, and equipment for overcoming obstacles;
- the presence of passages through obstacles;
- the readiness of communications.

The regimental (battalion) commander carries out his check of the readiness of the small units for the offensive so that 2 to 3 hours before the beginning of the artillery preparation for the attack he can report to his immediate superior concerning the complete readiness of the regiment (battalion) to attack.

Any defects discovered are corrected on the spot.

At the appointed time, the regimental (battalion) commander personally announces to his subordinate commanders the time of attack on the enemy main line of resistance (H-hour).

### 3. CONDUCT OF OFFENSIVE COMBAT

163. With the beginning of the artillery and air preparation for the attack, regimental and battalion commanders observe from their own observation posts the course of the artillery and air preparation for the attack; they report to their immediate superiors the results of the missions accomplished by the artillery and air force.

The battalion commander sees to it that the infantry, before the beginning of the attack, directs fire from its own weapons on the enemy's first and second trenches.

Guns and self-propelled artillery, detailed for direct fire, destroy and demolish the targets assigned them in the first position at the time established by the plan of the artillery preparation for the attack. In the course of the last concentration of fire, they conduct fire against targets located in the enemy's first and second trenches.

164. The enemy main line of resistance is attacked simultaneously by tanks and infantry at a precisely determined time (H-hour).

In order to assure a synchronized attack on the enemy main line of resistance,

~~SECRET~~

an order (signal) for beginning the movement of the close support tanks and the infantry to the attack is given by the regimental commander on authorization of the division commander, and it is repeated by the battalion commanders.

The moment for giving signals for the tanks and for the infantry concerning the beginning of the movement to the attack is determined in advance, depending on the time fixed for the attack on the enemy main line of resistance (H-hour), the distance of the tanks and infantry in the departure position from the main line of resistance, and the possible speed of movement of the tanks and infantry.

165. Tanks and infantry of the first echelon, under the cover of artillery fire, conduct assault fire. Exactly at H-hour they swiftly break into the enemy main line of resistance and unhesitatingly continue their forward movement, remaining close behind the shell bursts of their artillery.

Battalions of the first echelon of a regiment, with close support tanks, after capturing the first position, continuously attack the position of the regimental reserves, striving to capture as quickly as possible the positions of the enemy's division reserves. Clearing the trenches and shelters of individual enemy soldiers and of groups is done by small units detailed for this purpose from the second echelons (reserves) of the regiment (battalion), in the composition of which flamethrowers are incorporated.

The second echelon (reserve) of a regiment (battalion) begins to move at the same time as the first echelon.

166. Infantry close support tanks of a rifle (motorized rifle) battalion of the first echelon of a regiment, under cover of artillery and self-propelled artillery fire, conduct assault fire. Exactly at H-hour, they quickly break into the enemy's main line of resistance. They destroy the infantry and weapons which interfere with the advance of the small units of the regiment (battalion) and, together with the infantry, continue the forward movement, remaining close behind the shell bursts of friendly artillery.

Heavy tanks and self-propelled artillery advance immediately behind the medium tanks, mostly in the intervals between them. They destroy enemy tanks, self-propelled artillery, and antitank guns which are hindering the advance. When necessary, the heavy tanks move out in front and advance in front of the medium tanks or on line with them.

167. When the tanks and infantry commence moving to the attack, guns detailed for direct fire and some of the mortars conduct fire from position against the enemy's main line of resistance, without interfering with the movement of the small units which are attacking.

The greater part of the mortars and accompanying artillery, as well as machine gun small units, attack in the combat formations of the companies and support the attacking small units with fire at brief halts.

When the small units of the first echelon begin their movement to the attack, the mortar company of the battalion of the second echelon of a regiment conducts fire against previously designated targets without interfering with the movement of the small units which are attacking. Subsequently, the mortar company moves in the combat formation of its own battalion. On order of the battalion commander, the mortar company occupies a firing position, and supports with fire the commitment of the small units of the battalion.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

Antiaircraft small units, and machine gun small units detailed for firing on aircraft, move directly in the combat formations of the battalions (companies), not lagging behind them.

All commanders of mortar and artillery small units continuously observe the battlefield and the situation and operations of the attacking small units, and quickly neutralize by fire the targets hindering the attack, not waiting for orders from senior officers or for requests from commanders of supported small units.

168. For ensuring the continuity of the attack by the regiment, the regimental commander gives the signal for shifting the rolling barrage from the principal terrain lines, taking into account the position of the battalions which have successfully moved forward. Surviving and newly located enemy weapons which interfere with the successful advance of the small units are neutralized by the concentrated fire of artillery and mortars.

Signals for shifting fire are given by the regimental commander or by battalion commanders during the support of the attack of a regiment (battalion) by the method of successive concentrations of fire.

Fire of maximum density is directed against those enemy strong points which are the greatest obstruction to the advance of the attacking small units.

Commanders of artillery (mortar) batteries and battalions are obliged to watch constantly the position of attacking small units; to reconnoiter the enemy continuously; to destroy, on their own initiative and on a priority basis, the targets hindering the advance; and to shift fire according to the advance of the small units.

169. A change of firing positions of a regimental artillery group is carried out, as a rule, by battalions, so that the greater part of the group can give fire support to the infantry and tanks.

Artillery battalions intended for reassignment to commanders of rifle battalions are first to initiate the change of firing positions. The change of firing positions of these artillery battalions during combat in the depth of the enemy defense is carried out by batteries pobatareyno.

170. Combat in the depth of the enemy defense is the direct continuation and development of the attack. It is characterized by the unevenness of advance of the small units, and develops into a complicated and swiftly changing situation. The swiftness of the maneuver of fire and small units, and also the timely commitment of the second echelons (reserves) for the exploitation of gains acquire decisive significance.

Every success in the conduct of battle in the depth of the enemy defense must be immediately exploited and utilized for the achievement of the complete destruction of the enemy.

Battalions of the first echelon of a regiment with close support tanks and self-propelled artillery, moving forward swiftly with the support of concentrated artillery and mortar fire, destroy the enemy in his strong points, and likewise destroy his counterattacking tanks and infantry.

Battalions by-pass or block with part of their forces strong points in the depth of the enemy defense which are hindering the forward advance. Employing fire and smoke, they advance resolutely in their assigned directions.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

For the destruction of the most important targets, especially tanks and self-propelled artillery, batteries designated for direct fire are moved forward to open firing positions. The commanders of artillery small units, at the request of commanders of infantry (motorized infantry, cavalry) and tank small units, and also on their own initiative, concentrate fire on targets hindering the advance of the small units.

During combat in the depth of the enemy defense, the destruction and neutralization of his artillery and mortar batteries is accomplished immediately by those artillery units (small units) which have located them.

If the advance of a battalion is held up by enemy fire and bypassing the strong point is unsuccessful, the regimental commander neutralizes the enemy in the strong point by concentrated artillery and mortar fire and also by calling for air strikes. The battalion, with the support of all types of fire, attacks the enemy, captures the strong point, and continues to advance without stopping.

Obstacles and natural barriers located in the depth of the enemy defense during the course of combat are bypassed; passages are cut through them when it is impossible to by-pass them. Detours are established on sections of roads which have been destroyed.

When there are sectors inaccessible to tanks and strong antitank obstacles in the depth of the enemy defense, battalions (companies) of the first echelon, under cover of the concentrated fire of the regimental artillery group and the fire of tanks, self-propelled artillery, and accompanying guns, without breaking off their advance, seize the sectors inaccessible to tanks and the obstacles and ensure the further advance of the tanks.

In turn, the tanks, without losing fire coordination with the infantry, must utilize every possibility for a quick advance.

Passages through antitank-mine obstacles in the depth of the enemy defense are made by tanks equipped with mine-clearing devices, and by sapper small units; anti-personnel obstacles are cleared by the attacking small units themselves and by sapper small units.

When there is need for separating the tanks from the supported small units, so that the former can quickly capture an important line (objective), some of the rifle small units may be put on the tanks and self-propelled artillery as a tank-borne force.

Contaminated sectors of terrain located in the depth of the enemy defense, as a rule, are bypassed. When there is no possibility of by-passing, they are overcome by the use of standard and improvised means, and also are crossed on armored personnel carriers (motor vehicles) and by riding on tanks and self-propelled artillery.

171. With the development of combat in the depth of the enemy defense, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- firmly carry out the decision he has made;
- neutralize with concentrated artillery and mortar fire enemy personnel and enemy weapons in strong points which are preventing the advance of tanks and infantry;
- request aircraft for neutralization of the enemy in the strong points which are preventing the advance;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- during the execution of the immediate mission by the battalions (by companies, during the capture of the objectives of the attack), define in detail for them the subsequent mission (for the companies, the scheduled objectives of attack), organizing the necessary maneuver without reducing the tempo of the advance;

- employ boldly, for the advance of the battalions (companies), intervals which have appeared in enemy combat formations, pushing forward, if necessary, tanks and self-propelled artillery carrying infantry;

- destroy the counterattacking enemy, and widen the breakthrough by employing the small units, which have pushed forward, for launching attacks, in coordination with adjacent units, against the flanks and rear of the resisting enemy;

- support, by all available means, the most successfully advancing small units, destroying the enemy who is offering resistance on their flanks;

- for exploitation of success, commit the second echelon (reserves) to action in good time;

- consolidate the most important lines (objectives) or sectors of captured enemy positions;

- protect boundaries and flanks by continuous reconnaissance and by echeloning astupom the second echelon (reserves) and artillery-antitank reserves behind the threatened flank;

- restore expended second echelons (reserves).

For the purpose of ensuring coordination and continuity of control of the small units during combat in the depth of the enemy defense, the regimental (battalion) commander, while the subsequent mission is still being executed, defines in detail the direction of further advance, and establishes new missions for the battalions (companies).

A battalion commander is obliged to establish promptly missions for attached and supporting artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery, and to ensure the continuous presence of accompanying guns in the combat formation of the battalion, and also the presence of organic antitank means in readiness to repulse enemy tank counterattacks.

If the enemy has begun a withdrawal, the regimental (battalion) commander quickly organizes a relentless pursuit, not giving the enemy a chance to disengage and form into columns.

172. For the purposes of the most rapid seizure of the second defensive zone of the enemy, a battalion may be designated as a forward detachment. In this case, it is reinforced with tanks, self-propelled artillery, artillery, and sapper and chemical warfare small units.

Sometimes a tank and self-propelled regiment, reinforced with artillery and with rifle, sapper, and chemical warfare small units, may be detailed as a forward detachment.

Operations of the forward detachment are supported by aircraft.

The commander of the forward detachment, having received a mission, sizes it up, and studies the character of the terrain and the enemy defense in the direction

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



of anticipated operations and that sector of the second defensive zone which the forward detachment must capture. Then he makes his decision, issues a combat order, and organizes coordination.

On completion of the breakthrough of the enemy's main defensive zone, the forward detachment swiftly moves forward, bypassing the strong points of the defense which are occupied by the enemy, and in coordination with units of the mechanized division or independently, seizes, from the march, the assigned sector (objective) of the enemy's second defensive zone.

173. A regimental (battalion) commander, with the aim of preventing surprise enemy operations against the attacking small units, establishes continuous reconnaissance.

Reconnaissance must establish:

- the location of strong points in the depth of the enemy defense and the weapons in them;
- the presence of tank ambushes;
- the most favorable routes of approach, and unoccupied or weakly defended gaps [in the defense];
- the presence of obstacles and natural barriers, and how to overcome them or the possibility of by passing them;
- the location of enemy reserves and the degree of their preparedness for counter-attacks;
- the appearance of new weapons and the application of new methods in tactics;
- the beginning of a withdrawal of the enemy;
- the strength and composition of the small units covering the withdrawal.

Reconnaissance is conducted through continuous observation of the battlefield by all commanders and observers, by combat reconnaissance patrols sent out by company commanders, and also by separate reconnaissance patrols.

Separate reconnaissance patrols, when needed, are sent out by the regimental commander and commanders of battalions of the first echelon, and consist of 2 or 3 tanks, 1 or 2 armored personnel carriers with infantry, sappers, and chemical warfare personnel. In this case, separate reconnaissance patrols, as a rule, are commanded by officers.

Combat and separate reconnaissance patrols, operating ahead of and on the flanks of the attacking small units, must boldly penetrate unoccupied intervals and make timely reports on enemy operations.

174. The regiment of the second echelon advances with its small units in open formation, does not become separated from the first echelon more than a fixed distance, and is in constant readiness for immediate commitment.

The second echelon battalion of a first-echelon regiment advances with its small units in combat formation.

The second echelon is committed in order to increase the force of the attack and

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

for the continued exploitation of the success achieved by the first echelon. It is committed, depending on the situation, usually after the fulfillment of the immediate mission of the division (regiment, battalion).

Commitment is carried out in the intervals between the small units of the first echelon, from behind their flanks, or by leap-frogging through them.

During the commitment of the second echelon by leap-frogging through the small units of the first echelon, the regimental (battalion) commander, in order to avoid the intermingling of his own small units with the small units of the first echelon, does not allow a halt of the small units in the first echelon's position.

175. The commander of the regiment (battalion) of the second echelon, during the organization of an attack, is obliged:

- to study the terrain and character of the enemy defense in the direction of the commitment of the regiment (battalion);
- to define in detail the manner of attack and to determine the combat missions of the small units of the regiment (battalion);
- to organize the coordination of the small units of the regiment (battalion) among themselves and with the tanks and self-propelled artillery, and also to define in detail the coordination with the small units of the first-echelon regiment (battalion) and with adjacent units;
- to organize observation and reconnaissance;
- to define in detail the method for the support of the commitment of the regiment (battalion) by artillery fire and air attacks;
- to define in detail the manner of establishing communications with the commanders of the regiments (battalions) of the first echelon and with the commander of the division (regimental) artillery group.

176. With the commencement of artillery and air preparation for the attack, the commander of the second-echelon regiment is situated at his own observation post, near the observation post of the commander of that regiment of the first echelon in whose sector his commitment is planned. Subsequently, prior to the commitment of his regiment, the regimental commander changes his own observation post according to the situation.

177. During the approach to the line of commitment, the second-echelon regiment is deployed in combat formation. Deployment is covered by the concentrated fire of artillery, mortars, and antiaircraft small units. Under favorable conditions, smoke may be employed.

The commitment of the second echelon is supported by the greater part of the division (regimental) artillery, and by aviation.

178. The regimental (battalion) commander, when committing the second echelon, gives it its combat mission in detail; he coordinates the actions of the first and second echelon, and of both echelons with adjacent units; he places the greater part of the artillery and, in case of necessity, part of the tanks and self-propelled guns, in support of the second echelon; he gives missions to the artillery; and he establishes the manner of further attack.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

179. On order of the regimental commander, the artillery-antitank reserve displaces from one line to another on the most probable avenue of enemy tank counterattacks. It must not fall behind the first echelon farther than the prescribed distance. It is prepared to repel enemy tank counterattacks, to consolidate lines seized, and to secure the flanks of the advancing small units.

180. Enemy reserves are neutralized in their concentration areas by concentrated artillery fire and by air strikes.

During the attack, counterattacking small units of enemy tanks and infantry are destroyed by fire of all types. Enemy tank ambushes are destroyed by the fires of the self-propelled artillery, tanks, and guns (batteries) accompanying the attack, and by infantry antitank weapons.

If the enemy counterattacks with large numbers of tanks and infantry, it is advisable to occupy, ahead of time, a line favorable for battle and to meet the enemy with the organized fires of artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and infantry. Losses are inflicted upon the enemy; his combat formations are disorganized; and then, by an attack, in conjunction with adjacent units, against the enemy flank and rear, the counterattacking enemy is destroyed and the attack is developed further.

Small units which are not being subjected to enemy counterattack make all efforts to hasten their advance, in order to come out on the flank and rear of the counterattacking enemy.

The rapid coordination of artillery, tank, self-propelled artillery, infantry, sapper, and flamethrower small units in repelling enemy counterattacks is one of the most important duties of the regimental (battalion) commander.

In case of an enemy penetration into the combat formations, it is destroyed by the forces of the first and second echelons and reserves, supported by artillery and mortar fire.

181. To maintain uninterrupted coordination and to provide for the timely employment of air strikes against the enemy, the small units of the regiment (battalion) conduct uninterrupted observation of the actions of friendly aviation and of its signals. On order of the regimental (battalion) commander, the leading small units of the first echelon, by use of previously arranged signals, mark their front line and indicate targets.

Infantry and tanks give recognition and target designation signals to aviation as follows:

- at the approach of friendly aviation directly toward the battlefield;
- at the request of leading groups (of aircraft);
- when necessary to indicate targets which must be neutralized in first priority.

182. When mechanized (tank) units are committed in the zone of attack or on the flank of the regiment, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- support them by the fire of his artillery, mortars, and machine guns;
- ensure the aggressive attack of the small units of the regiment (battalion) in coordination with the mechanized (tank) units;
- organize the neutralization of remaining enemy strong points and the destruction of enemy antitank guns, and engage enemy tanks on the flanks of the mechanized (tank) units;
- free the march routes designated for use by the mechanized (tank) units.

183. Lines or separate objectives seized in the depth of the enemy defense which have an important tactical significance are consolidated by small units designated for this purpose.

During the consolidation of the lines (objectives) seized, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- organize reconnaissance on the directions of possible enemy counterattacks;
- give missions to small units relative to the defense of the line seized, and move the artillery-antitank reserve toward a dangerous tank approach;
- prepare artillery, mortar, and machine-gun fires, especially on dangerous tank approaches;
- organize the erection of antitank and antipersonnel obstacles in the most important directions and sectors;
- organize the security of boundaries and flanks.

Small units designated for the consolidation of an occupied line (objective) immediately dig in and prepare fires for repelling possible enemy infantry and tank attacks.

184. During the attack, the regimental (battalion) commander must make timely provision for:

- the care of sick and wounded and their evacuation from the battlefield;
- the resupply of small units, in first priority with ammunition, fuel, and lubricants;
- the displacement of small rear service units behind the advancing regiment (battalion);
- the maintenance of combat and transport vehicles, armament, and other equipment;
- the displacement of vehicles (armored personnel carriers) used to transport infantry;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- the administering of veterinary aid to sick and wounded horses and their evacuation to the rear;

- the reconnaissance of the terrain and of the sanitary-epidemiological and veterinary-epizootic condition of newly occupied areas;

- the establishment of prisoner-of-war collecting points and the further evacuation of military prisoners to the rear.

#### 4. OPERATIONS OF A FORWARD BATTALION

185. Reconnaissance in force before the beginning of an attack is conducted by forward battalions which are reinforced with tanks, self-propelled artillery, antitank artillery, and small units of sappers and chemical defense troops.

The operations of forward battalions are supported by sufficiently strong artillery and aviation.

Reconnaissance in force is organized by a senior officer and usually is conducted the day before the beginning of the attack or on the day of the attack.

During the time that it is executing its missions, a forward battalion is subordinated directly to the division commander.

186. The commander of a forward battalion, having received a mission, clarifies it, carefully studies the terrain, the location of enemy defense installations and obstacles, the enemy system of fire, and enemy actions. After this, he makes a decision, issues a combat order, and organizes coordination.

187. The forward battalion commander does all his work in organizing combat on the terrain in the same sequence and scale as when organizing the breakthrough of a prepared enemy defense.

When organizing coordination with adjacent units, the forward battalion commander gives in detail:

- the missions and the departure and firing positions of organic, attached, and supporting small units, and the situation of adjacent units;

- the order of movement of the small units of the forward battalion into firing and departure positions;

- what fires are made available by adjacent units to support the attack of the small units of the forward battalion and to protect its flanks, and the manner in which these fires will be conducted;

- the method of coordination in case the attack is developed into the depths of the enemy defense;

- the method of organizing communications with adjacent units, and signals for coordination with them.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

The commander of the forward battalion pays particular attention to organizing the security of boundaries and flanks and to organizing to repel unexpected enemy counterattacks.

188. The departure position of the forward battalion is occupied stealthily the day before the attack or during the night preceding the attack.

If the small units of the forward battalion occupy the departure position during the night before the attack, they must be given sufficient time during daylight hours to become acquainted with the terrain, enemy dispositions, and the objectives of the attack.

Rifle companies of the forward battalion usually use the first trench as their departure position. The small units of the first echelon which occupy this trench close up their combat formations, freeing sectors of the trenches for the small units of the forward battalion.

189. The commander of the regiment from which the forward battalion has been detailed, on order of the division commander, verifies the readiness of the forward battalion to execute its mission, and checks on the organization of coordination with attached and supporting small units and adjacent units. He also organizes material, technical, and medical support.

The regimental commander in whose sector the reconnaissance in force is being conducted, in conjunction with the forward battalion commander, accurately determines the following:

- the departure position for the small units making the reconnaissance in force and the order of their movement into it;
- the manner of employment of the means detailed from the regiment for the support of the attack of the forward detachment, and their missions;
- the measures for maintaining uninterrupted communication with the commander of the forward battalion.

190. The preparation of the forward battalion and the small units attached to it takes place, as a rule, ahead of time in the rear, on terrain prepared to resemble the enemy defense; particular attention is given to developing coordination between the small units of the battalion and tanks, artillery, and aviation.

For the rapid consolidation of the line (objective) seized, sapper small units attached to the battalion prepare, ahead of time, means for erecting antitank and antipersonnel obstacles, while supporting artillery prepares barrage fire for repelling enemy counterattacks.

191. The forward battalion begins its attack usually after a short artillery and air preparation.

Under the cover of powerful artillery fire and air strikes, the battalion aggressively attacks the enemy, breaks into his main line of resistance, boldly penetrates into the depth of the first position, seizes and consolidates designated lines (objectives), and by battle locates the enemy's grouping of forces and system of fire. The battalion captures prisoners, documents, and samples of new armament.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

Sapper small units attached to the battalion rapidly move forward and establish antitank and antipersonnel obstacles.

Accompanying guns, and tanks and self-propelled guns attached to the battalions, moving within the combat formations of the rifle companies, occupy firing positions and prepare to repel enemy infantry and tank counterattacks.

In case the enemy withdraws, the battalion commander organizes a pursuit, not losing contact with the enemy, and reports about his actions to the division commander.

192. With the beginning of battle by the forward battalion, the regimental commander and all subordinate commanders are located at observation posts, and personally study the actions of the enemy, his disposition, and his system of fire. They also observe the actions of the forward battalion and its supporting units and small units.

The main forces must be prepared to develop immediately a successful attack of the forward battalion.

## 5. ATTACK AT NIGHT

193. Operations of troops at night are a normal form of their combat activity.

Night most of all assists in attaining surprise and in decreasing losses caused by enemy fire.

The success of night combat depends upon its careful organization, prior reconnaissance, the secrecy of preparation, the degree of training of the troops in night combat, and the availability of means of illuminating the terrain. Particular attention must be given to concealment measures against all forms of enemy reconnaissance.

194. Preparations for a night attack are conducted on the terrain during daylight hours. In this connection, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- carefully study the enemy and the terrain;
- point out on the terrain to his subordinate units their missions, the departure area (departure positions), objectives of the attack, direction of attack, and reference points visible at night;
- determine artillery missions, the order in which attacking subordinate units are to be supported by artillery (mortar) fire, and the method for requesting, shifting, or ceasing fire;
- organize coordination between infantry, tanks, self-propelled artillery, sapper small units, and attached and supporting artillery, and announce the missions to be executed by aviation;
- establish an identification sign for his small units; signals for, and the manner of, illuminating the terrain; and the method of indicating locations to friendly aircraft;
- verify the state of preparedness of subordinate units for night actions;

~~SECRET~~

- provide for reinforcing captured lines (objectives) and for securing flanks;
- organize control and communications.

Commanders of small units of all arms must, during daylight, determine azimuths and study reference points and the directions of action of their own small units.

Small units must be given a greater amount of daylight time in which to organize a night attack.

195. Depths of regimental and battalion missions in a night attack are normally the same as they are for a day attack. Complicated maneuvers, however, are not permitted in a night attack.

The combat formation of the regiment (battalion) consists of two echelons or of one echelon. Reserves are held close to the combat formations of the attacking small units.

196. The regiment (battalion) attacks at night, as a rule, after an artillery preparation. All data for conducting artillery fire are prepared during the daylight hours.

Tanks and self-propelled artillery are attached to battalions (companies) and attack jointly with the infantry, moving directly within its combat formations.

To assist in achieving surprise, in certain cases a night attack may be conducted without tanks and without an artillery preparation. In these cases, artillery opens fire when the infantry attack begins or upon the signal of the attacking small units.

For maintaining direction, a guide battalion (company) is designated, the manner of illuminating the terrain and objectives is planned, and the installation of orienting lights is arranged.

Small units indicate their direction of attack by a series of lights; lines which they have reached are indicated by rockets or other clearly visible signals.

The battalion commander personally directs the guide small unit, moving directly behind it.

197. At the established time, infantry with tanks, self-propelled artillery, and accompanying artillery decisively assaults its designated objectives and without interruption continues the advance through the entire depth of the assigned mission.

In night combat, point-blank fire, the bayonet, and the grenade acquire special significance.

When developing a night attack in the depth of the enemy defense, flanks must be reliably secured.

Upon fulfilling its mission, the regiment (battalion) consolidates its position. It organizes a system of fire, establishes antitank and antipersonnel obstacles, sends out reconnaissance and combat security, brings up its fire support weapons, and prepares to repel possible counterattacks and to continue the attack at dawn.

~~SECRET~~



If the enemy withdraws, the regimental (battalion) commander, not awaiting dawn, must, on his own initiative, continue the attack and report about this to the division (regimental) commander.

198. If the night attack is a continuation and development of actions during the day, it is conducted, as a rule, by the second echelon of the regiment (battalion).

To maintain continuity of operations, the regimental (battalion) commander commits his second echelon immediately upon the approach of nightfall. For this purpose he must, during daylight hours, prepare the second echelon for a night attack and deploy it for battle on a favorable line.

In attacking when the enemy does not have a continuous defensive front, the regimental (battalion) commander must use night time for enveloping and by-passing enemy strong points and centers of defense, with the purpose of attacking them at night, or simultaneously from the front and rear at dawn.

199. In a night attack, special attention is given to finding and evacuating the wounded.

For the delivery of hot food and ammunition at night, small units use carrying parties detailed by the small unit commanders.

#### 6. PECULARITIES OF THE ATTACK OF MECHANIZED AND TANK REGIMENTS

200. A mechanized regiment, when attacking in the direction of the main effort, may receive a breakthrough sector up to two kilometers in width; a tank regiment, up to one and one-half kilometers; a motorized rifle battalion, up to 1,000 meters; and a tank battalion, up to 750 meters.

Tanks of the mechanized regiment and the self-propelled artillery attached to it are used, as a rule, for the close support of the motorized rifle battalions of the first echelon.

201. Before the beginning of an attack, a mechanized (tank) regiment is usually disposed in a waiting area /vyzhidatelnyy rayon/ in which preparations for the attack are continued, equipment is placed in combat readiness, and reserves of supplies are replenished; if necessary, means are prepared to assist vehicles in overcoming obstacles and to improve their cross-country performance; officers also carry out training exercises in connection with the forthcoming operations.

If movement for commitment into battle (into a breakthrough) is envisioned from a concentration area /rayon sosredotocheniya/, all preparations for combat are made in this area.

The decision of the commander of the mechanized (tank) regiment for the commitment of the regiment into battle (into a breakthrough) is made on the basis of a full understanding of the mission received, an estimate of the situation, and reconnaissance data.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

202. When conducting a reconnaissance, the commander of the mechanized (tank) regiment and the commander of the motorized rifle (tank) battalion, in addition to the matters usually attended to on a reconnaissance, must:

- study march routes to the departure line, and the terrain at the departure line and in the direction of operations;
- plan the manner of regulating movement on march routes;
- plan the manner in which the regiment and its subordinate units will be deployed during the movement from the waiting area, and the manner in which they will deploy into combat formation upon approaching the line of commitment into battle (into the breakthrough);
- accurately determine firing positions of the regimental artillery group upon commitment of the regiment into battle (into the breakthrough);
- determine the lines (area) for dismounting small units from armored personnel carriers (trucks), locations for armored personnel carriers (trucks), the manner of their displacement, and the manner of communicating with them.

In his decision, the regimental commander provides for:

- the formation of the regiment for the movement from the waiting area (concentration area) to the departure line and to the line of commitment into battle (into the breakthrough);
- the combat formation and missions of subordinate units upon deployment for combat on the line of commitment into battle (into the breakthrough);
- coordination within the regiment, with other units attacking in the regimental zone, and with supporting artillery and aviation;
- combat, political, engineer, material, and technical support;
- the organization of control and communications.

After making a decision, the regimental (battalion) commander issues a combat order.

203. When organizing coordination, the regimental commander, in addition to usual matters, must coordinate the actions of his regiment with other units (small units) operating in his zone during [their] commitment to battle (into the breakthrough) and during operations in the depth of the enemy defense. Further, he finalizes the details of artillery and air support and coordinates the actions of his subordinate units upon seizure of the enemy's second defensive zone (intermediate line).

204. A mechanized (tank) regiment of the first echelon of the mechanized divi-

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

sion of a rifle corps, in order to decrease vulnerability to enemy artillery (mortar) fire and air strikes and to ensure a rapid deployment into a combat formation, moves out of the waiting area toward the departure line dispersed laterally and in depth. It has to its front reconnaissance forces, a march support detachment, and combat security.

Battalions, depending upon the situation, move in columns or in open formation.

Tanks and self-propelled artillery attached to motorized rifle units of battalion or smaller size, move at the head of these units.

Small motorized rifle units follow either in armored personnel carriers (trucks) or riding on tanks and self-propelled guns.

Upon reaching its departure line, the regiment continues to move toward the line of commitment, ready to deploy for combat.

The regimental artillery group usually moves behind the regiments of the first echelon of the rifle division, in the direction of operations of its regiment, ready to deploy promptly and to support the commitment of the regiment into battle.

Upon approaching the line of commitment, the mechanized (tank) regiment deploys into combat formation and attacks the enemy in its assigned sector.

205. Where a mechanized division is operating in the second echelon of a rifle corps, the immediate mission of a first-echelon mechanized (tank) regiment of the mechanized division, on its commitment into battle for the completion of the breakthrough of the enemy's main defensive zone, is the completion of the breakthrough of the enemy's division reserve position, in coordination with the rifle regiments, and reaching the second defensive zone. Its subsequent mission is the seizure, from the march, of a sector of the enemy's second defensive zone.

The regimental mission for the day is the seizure of an important line in the depth of the enemy defense.

The immediate and subsequent missions of a first-echelon motorized rifle (tank) battalion depend upon the situation. The immediate mission of the battalion usually is the completion of the breakthrough of the position of the enemy division reserve, within the bounds of a designated sector. Its subsequent mission is the development of the attack into the depth of the enemy defense.

If the mechanized division operates in the first echelon of the rifle corps, the attack of a mechanized regiment is organized in a manner similar to the attack of a rifle regiment.

206. With the beginning of the artillery preparation for the attack, the commander of a first-echelon mechanized (tank) regiment, with his staff, is found at a command post located in the zone of action of the regiment. Subsequently, the regimental commander displaces to a new command post in accordance with the advance of the first echelon regiments of the rifle divisions.

The commander of a motorized rifle (tank) battalion, with his staff, is located at the head of the battalion during the advance from the waiting area to the line of commitment. With the deployment into combat formation, the commander of the motorized rifle battalion is located at his observation post, while the commander of a tank battalion is in his tank directly within the battalion's combat formation.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

207. During the approach of the regiment to the departure line, the regimental commander moves forward to the line of commitment, where he defines in detail on the terrain the missions of the small units of the regiment, of the regimental artillery group, of attached and supporting small units, and the method of coordination between them, as well as the method of coordination with adjacent units, with supporting aviation, and with units in whose zone the regiment is being committed to battle.

Having deployed in combat formation, the regiment (battalion) attacks in coordination with the units of the rifle division, completes the breakthrough of the position of the division reserves in the sector indicated, swiftly moves ahead, and seizes from the march a sector of the second defensive zone.

When the enemy's system of fire has been destroyed and when his resistance is insignificant, small units of motorized infantry advance behind the tanks on armored personnel carriers or advance by riding the tanks.

Difficult enemy strong points are blocked and by-passed.

Depending on circumstances, battalions are committed to battle by leap-frogging through the combat formations of the small units operating to the front, or are committed into unoccupied sectors and gaps which may be formed in the course of battle.

A battalion of the second echelon of a regiment follows the first echelon at a distance of 500 to 1000 meters and is committed to battle depending on the situation.

Armored personnel carriers (motor vehicles) designated for the transport of personnel, after small units dismount by the order of the battalion commander, are brought together on battalion level and dispersed in covered locations. Communication with them is maintained by radio, by mobile means of communication, and by visual signals. During the course of battle armored personnel carriers (motor vehicles), at the signal of the battalion commander, are moved forward from cover to cover in constant readiness to load the small units.

During the advance to the second defensive zone, a mechanized (tank) regiment must be prepared to repel counterattacks by enemy tanks.

208. A mechanized (tank) regiment of the second echelon is usually moved from the waiting area in open formation /rassredotochenno/, with its small units in open formation /v raschlenënnnykh stroyakh/, at a distance of two to four kilometers from the first echelon, and ready for commitment to battle.

Small units of motorized infantry usually move on armored personnel carriers (motor vehicles) and as tank-borne infantry.

209. The commander of a regiment of the second echelon, with the entry into battle of the first echelon of the division, is located at his observation post set up in the sector of a regiment of the first echelon and in the direction where the regiment will be committed to battle. He observes the course of battle of the regiments of the first echelon and conducts reconnaissance of the probable directions of his own regiment's commitment to battle.

Having received an order (signal) for commitment to battle, the commander of a regiment of the second echelon specifies in detail the missions of the small units and deploys the regiment in combat formation, after which the regiment attacks the enemy in the designated sector.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

210. During the approach to the second defensive zone, the commander of a mechanized (tank) regiment details the missions to the battalions and, utilizing the fire of supporting artillery and air strikes, carries out an attack on the enemy's second defensive zone from the march /s khoda/.

An attack by the main forces of a regiment usually is carried out on a narrow sector.

If the mechanized (tank) regiment does not succeed in seizing the second defensive zone from the march, the regiment consolidates on the line which it has attained and effects a breakthrough of the second defensive zone after an artillery and air preparation for the attack.

211. During the approach to the second defensive zone, the commander of a battalion assigns missions to the small units, after which the battalion attacks the enemy from the march and seizes objectives and lines in the depth of the enemy defense, the possession of which ensures the advance of the entire combat formation of the regiment.

The battalion of the second echelon of a regiment increases the strength of the first echelon's blow, widening the breakthrough to the flanks and developing it in depth.

212. Depending on the situation, a tank (mechanized) regiment of a division of a mobile group moves from the waiting area (concentration area) to the departure line and farther to the line of commitment into the breakthrough, depending on the situation, in one or in several march columns, with a march support detachment and combat security to the front.

During the approach to the line of commitment into the breakthrough, the regiment, if necessary, is deployed in combat formation and, in coordination with the units advancing ahead of it, attacks the enemy from the march /s khoda/ in its assigned sector and continues the execution of its assigned mission.

A regiment of the second echelon follows the first echelon at a distance of 2 to 4 kilometers.

213. The commander of a tank (mechanized) regiment, with his staff, moves with the main forces of the regiment.

With the necessity of deploying for battle on the line of commitment into the breakthrough, the commander of a regiment of the first echelon, during the approach to the departure line, moves up, with the officers of his staff and the commanders of his subordinate small units, to the line of commitment into the breakthrough, in order to detail the combat missions and coordination.

214. A mechanized (tank) regiment (motorized infantry or tank battalion) assigned as the forward detachment of a division of a mobile group moves to the line of commitment into the breakthrough simultaneously with the units operating in front. In coordination with them, it swiftly attacks the enemy and continues the execution of its assigned task, without letting itself be drawn into extended combat.

If the actions of the forward detachment are not successful, it consolidates on the line attained and ensures the deployment of the main forces.

215. In the course of offensive battle, combat reconnaissance patrols in strength of a tank platoon are sent from the tank battalions to a distance of 500 to 1000 meters from the combat formations with the following tasks:

- to protect the combat formation of the advancing tanks from sudden enemy attack and counterattacks;
- to locate the enemy's weapons;
- to determine the presence of obstacles and natural barriers, and routes for by-passing them or methods for overcoming them.

For reconnaissance of the enemy second (rear) defensive zone, with the aim of determining the unoccupied or weakly defended sectors, the commander of a mechanized (tank) regiment sends out separate reconnaissance patrols.

216. A motorcycle regiment (battalion) in offensive combat is employed for conducting reconnaissance during combat in the depth of the enemy defense. It may also act as a forward detachment, pursue a withdrawing enemy, destroy headquarters and communications centers, instill panic, disorganize the work of the rear, and conduct battle with enemy airborne landings.

A motorcycle regiment (battalion), for the solution of the missions which are being carried out, may be reinforced with artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper and chemical warfare small units.

The operations of a motorcycle regiment (battalion) must be active, daring, and sudden, based on swiftness and concealment of maneuver.

A motorcycle regiment (battalion) carries out the seizure of lines (objectives) in the depth of the defense of the enemy by an attack from the march /s khoda/, with the support of artillery and aviation.

## 7. PECULIARITIES OF THE ATTACK OF A CAVALRY REGIMENT

217. A cavalry regiment, after entry into a breakthrough, usually conducts an attack on an enemy who has hastily assumed the defense or is defending on a wide front.

The regiment must operate actively and decisively, maneuver skillfully, search out the enemy's weak spots and open flanks, make wide use of envelopments and turning movements, and inflict blows in the flanks and rear of the enemy with the aim of surrounding him and destroying him or taking him prisoner. In the absence of open enemy flanks, the regiment effects a breakthrough of his defense in its weakest place.

If the enemy is caught by surprise, the regimental commander must always try to attack him from the march /s khoda/. If an attack from the march is inadvisable, or has been unsuccessful, the regimental commander organizes an attack in a limited period of time.

Depending on the situation, the regiment attacks in mounted or dismounted formation, and also in a combination of these when part of the force is mounted and part is dismounted.

The attack in mounted formation is used in those cases when the enemy is caught by surprise--in a meeting engagement, during a disorganized withdrawal of the enemy, and also during an attack on his headquarters and rear service units and installations.

An attack must be sudden and decisive; it is carried out, as a rule, in conjunction with tanks and self-propelled artillery and is supported by all weapons.

The combat formation of the cavalry regiment, during attack in mounted formation, consists of one or several echelons, a regimental artillery group, and reserves. The regiment attacks from one or several directions. The regimental artillery, mortars, and heavy machine guns, moving on the flanks and in the gaps of the combat formation of the regiment, support the attack by fire. Tanks and self-propelled artillery attached to the regiment usually remain under the direct control of the regimental commander, and attack together with the troops eskradronamy in the direction of the regiment's main effort.

The combat formation of a cavalry regiment during an attack in dismounted formation consists of two echelons or of one echelon.

In setting up a combat formation in two echelons, there are usually three cavalry troops detailed to the first echelon, and one troop to the second echelon.

In setting up a combat formation of a regiment in one echelon, there is created, as a rule, a reserve comprising from two reinforced cavalry platoons to a troop.

218. The approach to the enemy's defense is made in mounted formation. The regiment must try to approach as close as possible to the enemy's defense in mounted formation. When further movement in mounted formation is impossible, the small units of the regiment quickly dismount in concealed places and continue the movement for the occupation of a departure position in an open, dismounted formation, utilizing accidents of the terrain. The horseholders lead the horses into places designated for them. They are disposed by troops, in a dispersed manner.

The occupation of the departure position by the regiment is accomplished under the cover of combat security and under cover of the fire of artillery, mortars, and antitank weapons.

219. During the advance on an enemy who has hastily gone over to the defense or who is defending on a wide front, a cavalry regiment operating in the direction of the main effort of the division may effect a breakthrough of the defense on a sector up to 1.5 kilometers in width.

The combat mission of the cavalry regiment in offensive combat is subdivided into immediate and subsequent missions, and a direction of further advance is indicated.

The immediate mission of the cavalry regiment of the first echelon of a division is usually the capture of the positions of the enemy's regimental reserves; the subsequent mission is the development of the attack in depth with the aim of destroying the division reserves of the enemy in cooperation with other units of the division. Upon the execution of the subsequent mission, the regiment swiftly proceeds in the direction assigned to it, with the aim of reaching the area (the line) of the division's mission of the day.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

The immediate mission of a cavalry regiment of the second echelon of the division is the completion of the destruction of the enemy's division reserves in coordination with the regiments of the first echelon. Subsequently, the regiment develops a rapid attack with the aim of reaching the area (the line) of the division's mission of the day.

Upon receipt of the mission for turning an enemy flank, the direction of operations is indicated to the regiment, and immediate and subsequent missions are assigned according to phase lines.

A cavalry troop is assigned an immediate mission and a direction of further advance.

The immediate mission assigned to a cavalry troop consists of the capture of the enemy's first defensive position. Subsequently, the troop advances in the indicated direction for the development of the offensive, with the aim of a breakthrough of the entire depth of the enemy's defense.

In a meeting engagement during deployment from the march, a direction of advance is pointed out to the troop, and the immediate mission is assigned, which consists in the seizure of a line ensuring favorable conditions for the further conduct of battle.

During an attack in a city, the mission of a troop is to seize a strong point or take a large building or several small buildings in the enemy's strong point.

220. During an attack, a cavalry regiment is reinforced with artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and small units of sappers and chemical warfare troops, is covered by fire from antiaircraft small units, and may be supported by aviation.

The regimental commander designates several batteries (artillery battalions), which are included in the composition of the regimental artillery group, for the support of the troops eskadronoy.

Regimental artillery and antitank artillery attached to the regiment are attached to troops by platoon and by battery, and are employed for close accompaniment of the attacking cavalry small units and tanks, while some of the artillery is assigned to the artillery-antitank reserve. During a regiment's occupation of the departure position, and in the period of the artillery preparation for the attack, the antitank artillery attached to the regiment and the regimental artillery are employed for direct fire.

Tanks and self-propelled artillery attached to the regiment, as a rule, are attached to cavalry troops and are employed for the direct support of the cavalry. Some of the self-propelled artillery, with the beginning of the artillery preparation for the attack, moves up to firing positions for the conduct of direct fire. During an attack from the march, and also during an attack in mounted formation, tanks and self-propelled artillery usually remain under the direct control of the regimental commander, and are employed in coordination with the troops in the direction of the regiment's main effort.

The mortar battery of the regiment is, as a rule, attached to the troops. For ensuring the movement of the regiment to the departure position, and in the period of the artillery preparation for the attack, the mortar battery may be employed under the direct control of the regimental commander. In this event the

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



fire of the mortar battery is planned by the commander of the regimental artillery group. The mortar battery of a regiment of the second echelon, which is being employed for the period of the artillery preparation for the attack, is employed as part of the regimental artillery group of one of the regiments of the first echelon.

The machine gun troop is attached, as a rule, to the cavalry troops. In certain cases the regimental commander may retain some of the machine guns of the troop under his own control.

During the breakthrough of the enemy's defense from the march, some of the sapper small units remain under the direct control of the regimental commander, while some of them may be attached to troops and to tank small units as early as the approach to the enemy defense, for the close support of their attack; with the beginning of the attack, sapper small units operate within their troop and tank small units' combat formations.

221. During the breakthrough of the enemy's hastily occupied defense from the march, the regimental commander makes a decision while still on the approaches to the enemy defense, using intelligence information. Having made a decision, the regimental commander assigns missions to the small units, indicates the manner of occupation of the departure position by the small units and the cover of their deployment by artillery and mortar fire, and also gives orders for the organization of coordination and combat security.

The regimental commander, during the assignment of combat missions, points out:

- to the commanders of first-echelon troops - the attached and supporting small units; the departure position (departure area); the immediate mission and the direction of further advance; missions for the security of boundaries and flanks; missions for antitank and antiaircraft defense;

- to the commander of the second-echelon troop - attached and supporting small units; the departure position (departure area); the mission, direction of attack, and probable line of commitment to battle; missions for the security of the boundaries and flanks of the regiment; missions for antitank and antiaircraft defense;

- to the commander of the machine gun troop - how many machine gun platoons and to which troops to attach them; missions of the platoons remaining under the direct control of the regimental commander, their firing positions, and order of displacement;

- to the commander of the regimental artillery group - additional missions for the periods of the artillery preparation and artillery support of the attack, as well as for the period of the artillery accompaniment of the cavalry and tanks during battle in the depth of the enemy's defense; the distribution of batteries (artillery battalions) for the support of the troops; the number and method of reassignment of small artillery units to the troops; the order of displacement of the artillery during the course of battle; the time of readiness to open fire;

- to the commander of the regimental artillery - the missions of the regimental artillery and of the mortar battery of the regiment during the period of the artillery preparation for the attack; how many and what kinds of guns to assign for direct fire, their missions and their time of readiness to open fire; the area of the firing positions and observation posts of the mortars remaining under the direct control of the regimental commander, and the order of their occupation;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- to the commanders of small units of close support tanks and small units of self-propelled artillery - the distribution of small units among the troops; lines of deployment (departure positions), the time of movement to them, the time and order of beginning the movement to the attack; the missions of tanks and self-propelled artillery during their employment under the direct control of the regimental commander (during an attack from the march);

- to the commander of the regimental reserve - composition, departure position (departure area), order of displacement, and the mission of being in constant readiness for operations in the most threatened directions;

- to the commander of the artillery-antitank reserve - composition, place of disposition, missions, order of displacement, and lines of deployment in the course of battle;

- to the commander of the antiaircraft battery - missions for covering small regimental units and horseholders and horses from enemy aircraft; firing positions, and the axis and order of displacement of the battery;

- to the regimental engineer - missions and method of employment of the sapper small units;

- to the commander of the chemical warfare service of the regiment - missions and method of employment of the chemical warfare small units;

- to the chief of staff - the location of command and observation posts and the axis of their displacement in battle; tasks for ensuring control, and tasks of communications in the departure position and in the course of battle; the time of readiness of communications in the departure position.

For a mounted attack, the regimental commander points out to troop commanders and to the commanders of tank small units the line of deployment, the direction and objectives of the attack, and the rallying area after the attack; he also assigns a mission to the artillery for the support of the attack.

222. For commitment into the breakthrough, a regiment is assigned a departure area (departure line) and a line of commitment into the breakthrough. The departure area (departure line) is designated 6 to 10 kilometers behind the line of commitment into the breakthrough.

Preparation of the regiment for commitment into the breakthrough is carried out in the concentration area and in the waiting area of the division.

The decision for commitment into the breakthrough is made by the regimental commander on the basis of his understanding of the assigned mission, an evaluation of the situation, and reconnaissance information.

During the conduct of reconnaissance the regimental commander, in addition to the usual questions being worked out, is obliged to:

- study the route of march of the regiment to the enemy's main line of resistance;

- outline the manner of deployment of the regiment in the departure area (on the departure line);

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- outline the manner of deployment of the regiment in moving and deploying into its combat formation during the approach to the line of commitment into the breakthrough;

- outline the method of organization of traffic control on the routes of march.

In his decision for commitment into the breakthrough, the regimental commander determines:

- the organization of the regiment for movement from the waiting area to the departure area (the departure line) and to the line of commitment into the breakthrough;

- the combat formation of the regiment and the combat missions of the small units on deploying for combat on the line of commitment into the breakthrough;

- the method of coordination inside the regiment, with units advancing in the sector of the regiment, and with supporting artillery and aviation;

- missions for reconnaissance, for antitank and antiaircraft defense, and other measures for combat security;

- missions for political, engineer, material, and technical support;

- the organization of control and communications.

After making a decision, the regimental commander issues a combat order.

223. From the waiting area to the assigned departure area (departure line), the cavalry regiment which is moving as the advance guard, by a separate route or in the first echelon of the division, usually moves in the following order: reconnaissance, march support detachment, leading detachment, main body of the regiment, rear service small units of the regiment, and rear security. A regiment of the second echelon of the division moves in a march column at a distance of 2 to 3 kilometers from the regiment marching ahead of it, and maintains local security.

Tanks and self-propelled artillery which are attached to the regiment, and which remain under the direct control of the regimental commander, move at the head of the column of the main body of the regiment. Some of the tanks and self-propelled artillery are attached, as a rule, to the leading detachment.

The regimental artillery group moves behind the tanks, at the head of the column of the main body of the regiment.

Small units of regimental and antitank artillery which are attached to the troops move within their columns. From the antitank artillery attached to the regiment, the regimental commander forms an artillery-antitank reserve which moves closer to the head of the regimental column. Some of the antitank artillery is attached to the leading detachment.

The mortar battery of the regiment is usually attached to the troops. If the mortar battery remains under the control of the regimental commander, it moves in the column of the main body of the regiment.

~~SECRET~~

The antiaircraft battery of the regiment moves by platoons in the regimental column, in the intervals between small units, and in constant readiness to open fire.

Sapper small units are assigned to the march support detachment of the regiment and to the leading detachment.

The distance between march security and the main body, and also the distances between small units in the regimental column, are shortened in comparison with the distances established during the execution of an ordinary march.

224. With its arrival in the departure area, the regiment deploys in it in a dispersed manner, and takes measures for security, for antitank and antiaircraft defense, and for camouflage; with the permission of the division commander, food is issued to personnel, and horses are watered and fed.

If a departure line has been assigned to the regiment, the regiment, depending on the situation, makes a halt on this line or crosses it without stopping, according to the instructions of the division commander.

The regimental commander, with the movement to the departure area (the departure line), moves to the line of commitment into the breakthrough, in order to establish in detail on the terrain the situation, his decision, the missions of the small units, and questions of coordination. He is accompanied by the troop commanders, the commander of the regimental artillery group, the commanders of attached small units (units), and officers of the staff.

225. The organization of the regiment for its commitment into the breakthrough depends on the assigned mission, the situation, and the place occupied by the regiment in the combat formation of the division.

From the departure area (departure line) to the line of commitment into the breakthrough, a cavalry regiment usually moves in open formation ready for deployment in combat formation, with a reinforced leading detachment ahead of it.

In the absence of enemy resistance on the line of commitment into the breakthrough, the regiment, depending upon the situation, crosses it in march column or in open formation; movement is accomplished at a high gait.

In case of minor resistance by the enemy on the line of commitment into the breakthrough, the regiment attacks the opposing enemy with the leading detachment in coordination with the units (small units) advancing to the front, enters the breakthrough, and moves decisively in the designated direction.

In case the operations of the leading detachment are not successful, the regimental commander makes a decision for the deployment of the main body of the regiment; in such a case, the regiment attacks the enemy, in coordination with the units (small units) advancing to the front, attempting to gain the depth of his defense as rapidly as possible.

The pursuit of the enemy by a cavalry regiment is conducted, as a rule, in mounted formation.

During offensive combat, as well as during the pursuit of the enemy, the regimental commander dispatches mounted combat patrols and separate mounted patrols on reconnaissance.

~~SECRET~~

226. Prior to the attack, horseholders and the horses of the dismounted small units are distributed, depending on the nature of the terrain, in a dispersed manner by troops or by platoons in covered places which ensure their concealment from enemy ground or air observation, and at distances which will permit turning over the horses quickly to the dismounted small units.

During an attack in a city, horseholders and horses are disposed in buildings and in other covered places.

In winter, horseholders with the horses are located in covered places which are protected from the wind.

In forcing a river, horseholders and horses cross according to instructions given by the regimental commander. The crossing of the horseholders and horses takes place, as a rule, after a sector of the terrain on the far bank has been seized which ensures the possibility of their concealed disposition.

Horseholders and horses move, during an attack, on the instructions of the regimental commander. They follow their own troops along concealed routes, ready to turn over the horses to them for operations in mounted formation.

The places where the horseholders and horses are disposed and the manner of their movement during combat are noted on reconnaissance and are usually indicated in the combat order.

Communication with the horseholders is accomplished by signals and messengers. A covering force is assigned, if necessary, to protect the horseholders from surprise attacks by the enemy.

#### 8. CONDUCT OF A MEETING ENGAGEMENT WITH DEPLOYMENT FROM THE MARCH

227. A meeting engagement with deployment from the march has the following characteristics:

- a sharp and swift change in the situation, and the fluidity of combat operations;
- swift changes in the combat formations of the troops conducting the attack;
- the existence of open flanks on both sides;
- the deployment of combat operations on a wide front, and freedom of maneuver;
- an intensive struggle for the seizure and retention of the initiative during the entire course of the battle;
- the organization of control, coordination, and communications in limited periods of time.

228. Success in a meeting engagement is achieved by:

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- the timely detection of the enemy and the establishment of constant observation over him;

- the swiftness and decisiveness of operations, the rapid deployment of the regiment (battalion) from march column into a combat formation and its commitment to offensive combat, and also the coordinated operations of the regiment's (battalion's) small units with attached and supporting small units;

- a vigorous infantry and tank attack on the enemy's flank and rear;

- splitting up the enemy into separate groups and the destruction of these groups piecemeal;

- beating the enemy to the seizure of a line which is favorable for combat, opening concentrated artillery and mortar fire, and carrying out air attacks on the enemy's combat and march formations.

229. A regimental battalion commander, in making a decision for a march must, in anticipation of a meeting engagement, do the following:

- determine the lines of possible clash with the enemy, determine the intent of the operations, and note the organization of the combat formation and the solution of basic questions for the organization of coordination in the event of deployment and conduct of combat on each line;

- determine the organization of the march formation, and distribute men and materiel in accordance with the intent of the operations during deployment for combat;

- organize reconnaissance, antiaircraft and antitank defense, and determine other measures of combat security;

- organize control and communications.

230. Reconnaissance is conducted in the direction of movement and on the flanks for the purpose of determining the position, composition, and direction of operations of the enemy, especially his tanks. Reconnaissance of the terrain must determine its possible effect on the combat operations of small units. For the purpose of reconnoitering the enemy's main body, small reconnaissance units must penetrate enemy security and find out the direction of movement and the composition of his columns. The regimental (battalion) commander must provide for the prompt receipt of messages from small reconnaissance units.

With the beginning of the battle, separate reconnaissance patrols (in the cavalry, mounted patrols), headed by officers, are sent out as a supplementary measure for the purpose of rapidly discovering the approach of enemy reserves and changes in his combat formation.

231. Strong march security is organized when effecting a march in anticipation of a meeting engagement. The regimental commander assigns as the advance guard (leading detachment [golovnoy otryad]) a battalion (in a cavalry regiment, a troop is assigned as the leading detachment), up to half of all the artillery, some of the tanks and the self-propelled artillery, and sapper and chemical warfare small units.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

Artillery on the march moves closer to the head of the advance guard (leading detachment) and to the head of the main body to ensure rapid deployment and delivery of fire.

The battalion commander reinforces the advance party golovnaya pokhodnaya zastava with artillery, self-propelled artillery, machine guns, grenade launchers, and sapper and chemical warfare small units. The composition and number of weapons allotted for reinforcement depends on the situation.

232. The tank and self-propelled regiment of the rifle (cavalry) division moves, during a march in anticipation of a meeting engagement, at the head of the division's main body or as an independent column. The tank and self-propelled regiment, at the beginning of combat, remains under the direct control of the division commander and is employed on the main direction to strike at the enemy's flank and rear. In individual cases, depending upon the situation, small units of the tank and self-propelled regiment may be attached to rifle (cavalry) regiments for employment during deployment for combat in the capacity of close support tanks.

The tank battalion of the mechanized regiment on the march moves at the head of the column of the main body of the regiment, or is attached to motorized rifle battalions for their close support in combat. In such cases, small tank units also move at the head of the columns of the motorized rifle battalions.

233. On a march in anticipation of a meeting engagement, the regimental commander, with his staff, moves at the head of the column of the regiment's main body; the battalion commander, with his staff, moves at the head of the column of the main body of the battalion. With the regimental commander are the commanders of the attached artillery and tank units (small units), and messengers from battalions (troops); with the battalion commander is one messenger from each company and from each attached small unit.

With the joining of combat, the command post of the regimental commander is deployed in the direction of the main effort.

234. Communications on the march with small reconnaissance and security units are provided by radio, mobile means of communication, liaison planes, and visual signals. Radio communications on the march are used for the transmission of signals; but, once the battle is joined, they are used without limitation.

235. Rapid deployment and transition to a decisive attack in a meeting engagement can lead to the defeat of a stronger enemy who has been unable to deploy. Consequently, swiftness in making a decision and communicating it to subordinate commanders, beating the enemy in opening artillery fire, and rapid deployment of the regiment (battalion) for combat acquire particular significance.

Delay in making a decision for combat causes the loss of initiative.

It is necessary, while deploying, to avoid complicated and superfluous movements which cause loss of time.

236. The commander of the regiment (battalion) operating in the advance guard (leading detachment) makes his decision for a meeting engagement usually when the forward security small units clash with the enemy, without waiting for exhaustive information regarding the enemy.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

In making his decision, the regimental (battalion) commander determines the following:

- the scheme of action, and the direction of the main effort;
- the deployment line of the regimental (battalion) small units;
- the mission of the advance guard (leading detachment, advance party), and the missions of the battalions (companies) comprising the main body;
- the missions of the artillery, and the manner of organization of the regimental artillery group;
- the missions of tanks and self-propelled artillery;
- the missions for antitank and antiaircraft defense, and other measures of combat security;
- the method of coordination;
- additional reconnaissance missions, and measures for the security of the flanks.

237. The combat formation of a regiment (battalion) is organized in two echelons or in one echelon.

Battalions are assigned directions of attack and immediate and subsequent missions according to lines, the seizure of which creates favorable conditions for the further conduct of combat.

Coordination is organized before the small units move to the line of deployment, and is further detailed with the beginning of combat.

238. The commander of the battalion which forms the advance guard (leading detachment), after the start of combat by the advance party, quickly makes a decision for the deployment of the battalion, assigns missions to the small units, and organizes coordination.

The advance guard (leading detachment), after the advance party has begun combat, moves to the deployment line in open formation on trucks or armored personnel carriers (in the cavalry, in mounted formation).

The line of deployment is chosen as close as possible to the enemy. This line must facilitate the concealed approach and the rapid deployment of small units into combat formation. The small units dismount during the approach to the line of deployment, and the trucks (armored personnel carriers) move back to a covered place.

The advance guard (leading detachment) should, by an impetuous attack from the march, destroy the enemy's security small units, by decisive actions tie up his main body of troops, and seize an advantageous line for the deployment of the main body of the regiment.

The attached antitank artillery is moved forward by the battalion commander to the threatened direction to cover the small units approaching the line of de-

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



ployment from possible enemy tank attacks.

The companies, under cover of artillery fire, move quickly to the line of deployment and, without halting there, swiftly attack the enemy together with tanks and self-propelled artillery, enveloping his flanks.

239. After the advance party has begun combat, the artillery of the advance guard (leading detachment) is rapidly deployed, without considering whether the areas are suitable for firing positions, and opens fire at once on the enemy for the purpose of preventing his deployment. Some of the batteries are moved to firing positions for the delivery of direct fire.

The artillery of the main body of the regiment must be so deployed that it can, with fire, defeat the enemy, lend timely support to the operations of the advance guard (leading detachment), and secure the movement to the line of deployment and the attack of the main body of the regiment.

240. As soon as the advance guard (leading detachment) begins combat, the regimental commander moves to an observation post with designated staff officers and the commanders of units (small units) attached to the regiment.

From his observation post, the regimental commander directs the combat of the advance guard (leading detachment), and supports it with artillery fire, taking measures to achieve rapidly centralized control of all the artillery of the regiment.

The regimental commander, for the purpose of deploying the main body of the regiment, designates a line so as to be able to attack the enemy on his flank and rear.

Having deployed in advance of the enemy, it is necessary to break up his combat formation by decisive operations and to destroy him piecemeal.

The success achieved is developed by a vigorous and incessant attack, in order not to give the enemy the opportunity to organize a defense and to regroup his forces.

In case of the enemy's withdrawal, the regimental commander details part of his forces for the destruction of small covering units, while he employs his main body to pursue the withdrawing enemy.

241. In case the enemy has deployed in advance of the regiment, and has attacked it with preponderant forces, the regimental commander orders the advance guard (leading detachment) to take up the defense in order to halt the enemy's attack, hold the occupied line, and ensure favorable conditions for the deployment and entrance into battle of the main body of the regiment.

If the enemy attempts to attack on the flank, the regimental commander quickly concentrates fire on the attacking enemy and moves his reserve, part of the anti-tank artillery, and sapper small units equipped with mines toward the threatened flank. After inflicting losses on the enemy and disrupting his combat formations by fire, the regiment destroys him by a counterattack.

242. When the regiment is moving as part of the main body of the division, the regimental commander, on receiving a combat mission, makes a decision, immed-

~~SECRET~~

ately sends out reconnaissance in the direction of advance and on the flanks, dispatches combat security, organizes the movement of the small units to the deployment line, takes measures for the most rapid establishment of communications with attached (supporting) small units and adjacent units, assigns missions to the small units, and organizes coordination on the terrain. The regiment, after deployment, decisively attacks the enemy.

The regimental commander organizes command and coordination in a limited period of time.

243. In order to capture favorable lines (objectives) and to hold them until the approach of the advance guard, forward detachments, composed of rifle (motorized rifle, motorcycle, tank, cavalry) small units, reinforced with artillery, mortars, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper and chemical warfare small units, are sent out by order of the division commander.

In some instances, for the seizure of the most important lines, a forward detachment may consist of the tank and self-propelled regiment of a rifle (cavalry) division, reinforced with artillery, rifle small units, and sapper and chemical warfare small units.

Operations of forward detachments are supported by aircraft.

Before setting out, the commander of the forward detachment sends out reconnaissance with the mission of finding out the location of the enemy, determining his composition and direction of movement, and also determining what obstacles exist on the route of movement of the forward detachment.

The method of movement and the measures for march security of the forward detachment are established by the commander of the forward detachment according to the situation and mission.

Having beaten the enemy to the capture of a designated line (objective), the commander of the forward detachment organizes all-around defense, sends out reconnaissance and combat security in the most exposed directions, and holds the line (objective) until the advance guard approaches.

In case the enemy has already seized the line (objective), the forward detachment attacks the enemy from the march, if possible in the flank and rear, and captures the designated line (objective).

With the approach of the advance guard of the division, the forward detachment, if its strength amounts to one battalion (troop), passes to the control of the advance guard. A forward detachment which is composed of one regiment remains under the control of the commander who dispatched it.

244. With the beginning of combat, the rear service small units of the advance guard (leading detachment) are deployed as close as possible to the combat formations of the small units. Wounded are usually evacuated from the battlefield directly to the regimental aid station.

~~SECRET~~

9. SURMOUNTING THE ENEMY'S SECURITY ZONE

245. The enemy's security zone is seized from the march by advance guards (leading detachments) or by forward detachments.

A battalion forming the advance guard (leading detachment) of a regiment or assigned to a forward detachment may overcome the security zone on a front having a width of up to 3 km. The battalion is reinforced with artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper, chemical warfare, and flamethrower small units, and is protected by smoke agents. The artillery of the main body and the air force support the combat of the advance guard (leading detachment, forward detachment).

The operations of a battalion forming the advance guard (leading detachment) are directed by the regimental commander; the operations of forward detachments are directed by the division commander.

246. Once the battalion commander has ascertained, by reconnaissance and by the combat of the advance party, the enemy's defense system at the forward edge and in the depth of the security zone, he makes his decision, assigns combat missions to the commanders of small units, and organizes coordination.

In order to ensure greater independence for the rifle companies, guns, mortars, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and flamethrower, sapper, and chemical warfare small units are attached to them. For the support of the companies, the battalion commander designates small units from the artillery which is attached to the battalion.

During the attack on the forward edge of the security zone, the principal effort of the battalion must be concentrated in a narrow sector for the purpose of rapidly wedging into the depth of the security zone, gaining the flank and rear of the enemy small units, and destroying them in coordination with adjacent advance guards (leading detachments, forward detachments).

247. The attack of the advance guard (leading detachment, forward detachment) is supported by concentrated artillery fire against enemy personnel and weapons located in strong points ahead of and on the flanks of the advancing small units; artillery fire, in this respect, does not permit enemy counterattacks. The operations of the advance guard (leading detachment, forward detachment) are also supported by aircraft.

248. Following the breakthrough of the forward edge of the security zone, the battalion's small units continue their incessant offensive, striving on the heels of the withdrawing enemy to overcome obstacles and to capture successive positions in the security zone, as well as the position of the combat outpost lying before the main (first) defensive zone.

Bold, enterprising actions of minor small units take on decisive importance. Companies (platoons) must penetrate the gaps between the strong points, attack the enemy in flank and rear, and prevent his withdrawal to successive positions.

Obstacles are quickly outflanked or overcome along passages made by tanks equipped with mine-clearing devices, by sapper small units, or by fire delivered from guns detailed for direct fire.

249. The main body of the regiment moves at a distance of 4 to 6 kilometers from the advance guard (leading detachment), ready to support its operations and to exploit its success.

The regimental commander, personally observing the operations of the advanced guard (leading detachment), supports its offensive with the artillery fire of the main body and, in cases of necessity, designates small units with mortars and anti-tank weapons for the protection of its flanks and rear.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

During combat in the security zone, the regimental commander defines in detail the mission of the advance guard (leading detachment), with regard to the destruction of the enemy's combat outpost and the reconnaissance of the main line of resistance of his main (first) defensive zone.

250. The advance guard (leading detachment, forward detachment), after capturing the position of the combat outpost, must, from the march, break into the main (first) defensive zone of the enemy and seize such points on the main line of resistance as will ensure observation of the depth of the defense.

The advance guard (leading detachment, forward detachment), once the main (first) defensive zone of the enemy has been successfully attacked, continues its advance without interruption. The regimental commander, with the main body of the regiment, must exploit without delay the success achieved by the advance guard (leading detachment, forward detachment).

#### 10. PECULIARITIES OF AN ATTACK ON AN ENEMY WHO HAS HURRIEDLY TAKEN UP THE DEFENSE

251. A hurriedly occupied defense is characterized in the beginning of its organization by the following:

- incomplete readiness and, as a result of this, reduced stability;
- an inadequately developed and organized system of antipersonnel and anti-tank fire;
- an inadequate development of defense installations both on the main line of resistance and in depth;
- hurriedly organized coordination and unstable control;
- a poor knowledge of the terrain.

A breakthrough of a hurriedly occupied defense is made, as a rule, from the march or by preparing an attack in a limited time.

Support of the attack is effected by successive concentrations of artillery fire on the enemy strong points.

252. The regimental (battalion) commander makes his decision for the attack during the approach to the defense, employing reconnaissance information and the results of the combat of the forward detachment (advance guard, leading detachment), if the latter is operating in the zone of attack of the regiment.

The breakthrough of the enemy's defense is made on a narrow sector.

As a rule, battalions are assigned only immediate missions (objectives for attack are indicated to companies), and are given directions of further attack.

The depth of combat missions is determined according to the nature of the enemy defense and the degree of its readiness.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

253. Upon making his decision for the attack, the regimental (battalion) commander issues a combat order, and gives instructions regarding deployment in combat formation, the occupation of the departure position, the cover of the deployment with artillery fire, and the organization of coordination, which is further detailed during combat.

254. The occupation of a departure position by small units of a regiment (battalion) is carried on under cover of fire from artillery and mortars and also under the protection of combat security. Having deployed into a combat formation, and having occupied a departure position as close as possible to the enemy main line of resistance, the small units of the regiment (battalion), without delaying and in conjunction with infantry close support tanks and self-propelled artillery, attack from the march the enemy's main line of resistance, with the support of artillery fire and air strikes. Having wedged into the enemy defense, the regiment (battalion) decisively moves forward, attempting to reach in the shortest possible time the area of the enemy's main artillery positions and destroy his division reserves.

If, in the course of the attack, the enemy begins a withdrawal, the regimental (battalion) commander organizes his relentless pursuit.

255. In the event that a breakthrough, from the march, of the enemy defense is unsuccessful, the regiment (battalion) consolidates on the line reached, and the regimental commander organizes a breakthrough of the enemy defense, with the preparation of the attack in a limited time.

The small units of the regiment (battalion) occupy a departure position as close as possible to the enemy and dig in.

256. A breakthrough of the enemy's hastily occupied defenses with the preparation of the attack in a limited period of time requires the further detailing of reconnaissance data and the study of targets, and also a new plan of artillery fire and the organization of its centralized fire control.

The duration of preparations for attack by a regiment (battalion) when time is limited is determined by the time required for organizing coordination and the artillery preparation for the attack.

#### 11. BREAKTHROUGH OF A FORTIFIED AREA

257. The defense of a fortified area is usually based on permanent defense installations and field positions; heavy obstructions, both in front of the main line of resistance and in the depths of the fortified area; and a prearranged system of fire, especially flanking and short-range surprise flanking fire [kinzhalny ogon], with a developed system of observation.

The breakthrough, as a rule, is accomplished by the simultaneous cracking of the fortified area's main (first) defensive zone and the impetuous development of the main blow into the depths for the purpose of seizing subsequent defensive zones on the march and of striking blows toward the flanks to widen the breach which has been formed.

The success of the operations of a regiment (battalion) in the breakthrough of a designated sector of a fortified area depends upon thorough preparations for attack, the attained state of destruction and neutralization of the permanent defense installations, the disruption of the enemy fire system and the disruption of coordination between his permanent garrisons and the field forces which are defending the fortified area.

~~SECRET~~

A regimental (battalion) attack during the breakthrough of a fortified area is supported by heavy artillery fire and air strikes, and consists of an impetuous infantry and tank attack through the entire depth of the assigned mission.

The regimental (battalion) attack is supported by a double or, when there are sufficient weapons, a triple rolling barrage, and by a greater quantity of infantry close support tanks and self-propelled artillery than is used under normal conditions. For this purpose, primarily heavy tanks and heavy self-propelled artillery are employed.

Infantry close support tanks, including those detailed to assault groups and detachments, as a rule, are rigged with mine-clearing devices.

258. Direct preparation for the breakthrough of a fortified area is organized after taking the security zone, when close contact has been made with the main line of resistance of the enemy's main (first) defensive zone.

In preparing to break through a fortified area, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- organize the systematic and careful study of the defense system in the sector of the intended breakthrough;
- establish continuous observation over each permanent and field defense installation;
- organize the careful study of enemy obstacles both in front of the main line of resistance of the main (first) defensive zone and in its depth;
- organize, in the departure area for the attack, the preparation of departure positions for the infantry and deployment lines (departure positions) for tanks and self-propelled artillery, all of which ensure the disposition of compact combat formations and the building up of a thick network of observation posts;
- make sure that the forward trenches are dug as close as possible to the main line of resistance of the enemy fortified area;
- establish the order of overcoming antitank ditches and post obstacles under conditions of many-zoned obstacles ahead of the enemy main line of resistance, and of overcoming obstacles which protect permanent defense installations;
- determine the order of blocking and destroying permanent defense installations;
- organize the formation and preparation of assault groups and detachments and the joint training of small units of all arms and of special troops at specially selected and prepared sites;
- organize the wide employment of flamethrower-incendiary and smoke facilities;
- study the photographs of each permanent installation and of the terrain in its area, and also the system of trenches and communication trenches;
- compare all available information on each permanent installation for the purpose of determining the type of installation, the number of embrasures in it, sectors of fire, dead spaces, engineer-type obstacles which directly cover the permanent installation, and the approaches to it; determine the means and methods needed to destroy or neutralize the weapons in the permanent installation.

~~SECRET~~

When studying the enemy's system of fire and permanent defense installations, it is necessary to determine the fire support between the permanent defense installations and the weapons of the field troops defending the fortified area.

Separate cards are made out for all permanent installations which are detected; installations are plotted on a map (sketch). Commanders of small units (up to company, battery inclusive) are provided with plans or maps, interpreted photographs (vertical and oblique), and large-scale reconnaissance sketches.

259. In the breakthrough of a fortified area, the regiment [attacking] in the direction of the main thrust may be assigned a breakthrough sector up to 1500 meters in width; a battalion, up to 750 meters.

In the breakthrough of a fortified area, the combat formation of a regiment is made up of two or three echelons, an artillery group, and reserves.

Each echelon of a regiment is made up of the combat formations of the battalions operating in line (or of one battalion), together with the facilities for their reinforcement. When powerful, complex defensive installations and strong points exist in the regimental zone of attack, assault detachments are included in each echelon.

A battalion combat formation is made up of two echelons or of a single echelon which includes company combat formations and assault groups.

260. Assault groups are organized, on instructions of the regimental commander, in each battalion of the first echelon of the division and, when necessary, in the battalions of the second and third echelons of the division to block and destroy permanent and important field defensive installations. The composition of assault groups depends upon the size, fire power, and sturdiness of the permanent or field defensive installations being attacked. An assault group has the following: from a squad to a platoon of infantry equipped with heavy machine guns and grenade launchers; heavy caliber machine guns; field pieces and mortars of different calibers, including heavy mortars and heavy caliber guns; tanks; heavy self-propelled artillery; from a squad to a platoon of sappers; up to a squad of light flamethrowers; and means of communication.

Assault groups also include aid men.

The number of assault groups depends upon the number of permanent or field defensive installations, on the main line of resistance and in the close-in depths of the enemy's defense in the regimental attack zone, which are to be blocked and destroyed. A single assault group is usually organized in a battalion.

Specially selected and trained officers are assigned as assault group commanders.

261. Assault detachments, up to a rifle battalion and up to a sapper company in strength, are organized in regiments on the instructions of the division for the purpose of blocking and destroying heavy, complex installations and strong points. These assault detachments are reinforced by heavy and special tanks, small units of heavy self-propelled artillery, artillery batteries of different calibers including heavy caliber batteries, mortars, and small units of flamethrowers.

~~SECRET~~

Assault detachments are divided into assault groups, the number of which depends upon the number of permanent and important field defensive installations in the enemy strong point which are subject to attack.

Assault detachments and assault groups are supported by smoke agents and explosives.

262. The immediate mission of a regiment is usually the seizure of the strong points located in the first position; the subsequent mission is the completion of the breakthrough of the first position and the seizure of the second position; the mission of the day is the completion of the breakthrough of the main (first) defensive zone and the development of the attack against the enemy's second defensive zone.

The immediate mission of a regiment of the second echelon is usually the seizure of the second position in coordination with the regiments of the first echelon; its subsequent mission is the completion of the breakthrough of the main (first) defensive zone and the development of the attack against the second defensive zone.

The mission of a battalion is usually the seizure of a strong point in the first position. With the completion of the mission, the battalion develops the attack into the depths of the defense in order to seize subsequent strong points.

A company is given a visible objective of assault against the first position and a direction of further attack.

Combat missions of a mechanized (tank) regiment of the mechanized division of a rifle corps are determined depending on the division's mission and on the character of the fortified area.

263. The regimental commander organizes the preparation of the small units and assault groups and detachments on terrain which is equipped with mock-ups and obstacles of a type similar to the enemy installations. Particular attention is paid to instruction in the methods of blocking and destroying permanent installations, to coordination within assault groups (detachments), and also to the coordinated operations of the assault groups (detachments) with the small units of the regiment (battalion) which are assaulting enemy positions between the permanent defensive installations.

264. During preparations for the breakthrough of a fortified area, as much time as possible is needed for the careful organization of coordination on the terrain. When organizing coordination, the regimental (battalion, assault detachment) commander, in addition to general questions, further details:

- the nature of the permanent and important field defensive installations and the number of embrasures, sectors of fire, and entrances of the installation;

- the location of weapons, obstacles, and natural obstructions covering the approaches to each permanent and field defensive installation;

- the departure position for the attack, the time of its occupation, concealed approaches to attack objectives, and the method of assault on each permanent defensive installation;

~~SECRET~~



- the manner of blocking and destroying permanent defensive installations by assault groups (detachments) and the support of their operations by artillery fire, air strikes, flamethrower-incendiary weapons, and smoke;

- the manner of surmounting obstacles ahead of the main line of resistance and in the depths of the enemy defense;

- the method of operations of assault groups and small units of the battalions which are attacking enemy field positions;

- the artillery and air missions being executed in the regimental (battalion) zone of attack in accordance with the plan of the senior commander;

- the manner and methods of destroying and blinding permanent defensive installations and the neutralization of their garrisons;

- the manner of providing fire cover and engineer support for the operations of heavy caliber guns designated for the conduct of direct fire on the embrasures and exposed walls of installations;

- the manner of organizing communications within assault detachments and assault groups, and also the manner in which they will communicate with the small units of the regiment (battalion).

265. Before the start of an assault on a fortified area, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- check the results of the destruction of permanent defensive installations; check the results of the neutralization and destruction of the enemy occupying the field defensive installations; and, if necessary, assign to the artillery additional missions, immediately reporting this to the division (regimental) commander;

- insure the simultaneous attack of the infantry, tanks, and assault groups (detachments).

During the attack, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- observe the timely shifting of artillery fire according to the phase lines of the rolling barrage and assign missions to attached and supporting artillery for the neutralization (destruction) of enemy personnel and weapons which are holding up the advance of the small units;

- ensure continuous coordination with aircraft and call them in to neutralize the enemy in strong points which are obstructing the advance;

- ensure the timely forward movement of accompanying guns, including heavy caliber guns, and assign to them the mission of neutralizing (destroying) newly detected and surviving enemy weapons;

- ensure the timely subordination to battalions of artillery battalions from the regimental artillery group and their displacement forward;

~~SECRET~~

- provide fire support for the operations of assault groups (detachments) while they are destroying permanent defensive installations;
- continuously maintain coordination between assault groups (detachments) and small units of infantry and tanks;
- make timely assignment of missions to the artillery, tanks, and small units of the regiment (battalion) for repelling enemy tank and infantry counterattacks;
- promptly consolidate captured areas (lines, objectives) by using specially designated small units.

266. Assault groups (detachments) move out toward the permanent defensive installations simultaneously with the movement of the infantry and the infantry close support tanks into the assault. Direct fire guns, tanks, self-propelled artillery, machine guns, and flamethrowers fire on the embrasures of surviving permanent defensive installations, destroy the garrisons' resistance, and destroy weapons covering the approaches to the installations. Some of the guns and self-propelled artillery supporting the assault groups (detachments) are disposed on their flanks to protect the approach of the assault group right up to the permanent defensive installations being blocked.

With the approach of the assault groups right up to the assault objectives, these guns transfer their fire to the intervals between the permanent defensive installations and to the immediate depths of the enemy defense, in order to destroy and neutralize the weapons which hinder further advance and to break up enemy counterattacks.

Assault groups (detachments) block and destroy surviving permanent defensive installations. The infantry, along with the tanks and self-propelled artillery, breaks into the intervals between the permanent defensive installations and, without stopping at the first trenches, bravely advances behind a rolling barrage into the depth of the enemy defense.

The regimental artillery-antitank reserve, on the order of the regimental commander, displaces from line to line in readiness to repel enemy tank counterattacks.

267. During combat in the depths of the fortified area, the regimental (battalion) commander must make use of the relaxation of fire of the permanent defensive installations for an impetuous advance of the small units, the widening of the breakthrough, and the destruction of the enemy by operations in his flank and rear. Second (third) echelons, reinforced by tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper small units, are used for this purpose.

Permanent defensive installations which are discovered in the depths of the fortified area and are delaying the advance of the attacking small units are neutralized by artillery, tank, and self-propelled artillery fire, and are blocked and destroyed by assault groups. Captured areas (lines, objectives) are consolidated by specially designated small units, and permanent defensive installations are blown up.

Smoke is widely used to blind permanent defensive installations and to support infantry and tank attacks.

~~SECRET~~

## 12. OFFENSIVE COMBAT IN A CITY

268. A city with strong stone buildings and radiating underground installations (passages) can easily be adapted to defense. In such an event, it represents a special type of fortified area, which requires the application of special methods of conducting offensive combat.

Offensive combat in a city is characterized by the limitations on the fields of observation and fire, by the complexity of controlling small units, and by the limited opportunities for maneuver.

Offensive combat in a city is divided into a series of separate local battles. It is distinguished by particular stubbornness and surprises.

The success of an attack is attained by:

- the timely and careful study of the city and the peculiarities of its defense;
- the coordinated operations of small units, which display bravery, daring, and initiative;
- the continuity of the conduct of the attack, day and night, with a gradual increase in the force of the blow, especially where success is apparent;
- the providing of the attacking small units with the necessary means for combat and for the destruction of defensive objectives;
- the consolidation of captured city blocks and important objectives, the destruction of enemy groups remaining in them, and the organization of a commandant's service.

269. When the attack is developing successfully, the regimental (battalion) commander must strive to take by surprise the enemy troops which are defending the city, and to occupy the city or part of it by a surprise attack from the march.

Success in a surprise attack on a city is attained by:

- regimental and battalion operations, which display bravery, daring, and initiative;
- the seizure, in first priority, of the principle strong points and centers of defense on the main streets of the city, telephone and telegraph stations, bridges, and viaducts with the aim of cutting off the enemy and depriving him of the opportunity to maneuver inside the city;
- a build-up of men and materiel where success is apparent.

If the surprise attack is not successful, the regimental (battalion) commander, by order of the division commander, prepares a new attack, directing the efforts of the regiment (battalion) toward the seizure of those strong points (buildings) on the capture of which depends the success of the battle.

270. The regimental (battalion) commander makes a prior study of the city and the peculiarities of enemy defenses in it. For this purpose, he uses a large-scale city plan, supplemented by aerial photographs and information obtained from the interrogation of prisoners and the questioning of local inhabitants. Moreover, the regimental (battalion) commander organizes reconnaissance and the collection of infor-

~~SECRET~~

action from neighboring units and from attached and supporting units and small units.

On the basis of all available data, the regimental (battalion) commander must determine:

- the trace of the main line of resistance of the enemy defense;
- the presence of strong points on the outskirts and inside the city and the intervals between them;
- the character of the buildings which have been prepared for defense, and the disposition of enemy weapons in them;
- the enemy system of fire, and the location of his artillery, mortars, anti-tank guns, and other weapons;
- the location of antipersonnel and antitank obstacles;
- the nature of the water obstacles in the city and the conditions of forcing them;
- the direction and width of streets and underground installations; the location of administration buildings, squares, telephone, telegraph, and radio stations, railroad stations, banks, electric power stations, water supply stations, factories, plants, warehouses, bridges, gardens, parks, stadiums, and other objects whose seizure will ensure the capture of the city;
- the number and composition of the population of the city and its attitude towards one's own troops.

271. The regimental zone of attack, depending on the situation, usually includes one or two streets which lead into the center of town and the city blocks adjacent to them.

The immediate mission of the regiment is the seizure of one or two city blocks; the subsequent mission is the seizure of part of the area of the city.

The immediate mission of the battalion is the seizure of a strong point or of one city block; the subsequent mission is the seizure of important objectives in the depths of the enemy defense.

The mission of the company is the seizure of a part of a large building, a separate building, or several small buildings in an enemy strong point.

272. An assault (storm) on individual objectives, depending on their size, strength, and the enemy forces which are defending them, is carried out by reinforced battalions, companies, and platoons.

In the conduct of battle inside a city, a significant part of the artillery, including heavy caliber artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery, and also sapper and flamethrower small units, are attached to rifle small units.

~~SECRET~~

Small units are given additional supplies of hand grenades and small arms ammunition and are provided with devices for assaulting buildings, smoke agents, and signalling equipment.

Direct fire by weapons of all calibers, including rocket artillery, is widely used.

273. An assault (storm) on a separate fortified building is carried out after an artillery preparation, primarily by the fire of guns detailed for direct fire. Small rifle units, under cover of their own fire and also of the fire of artillery (mortars), tanks, and self-propelled artillery, move out vigorously to the building being assaulted, break into it, and destroy the enemy with grenades and submachine gun and carbine fire.

When necessary, flamethrowers from neighboring captured buildings destroy the enemy with fire directed through the windows and breaches in the walls of the house being assaulted. At the outset of the assault, the artillery bars the enemy reserves from gaining access to the target under attack; part of the artillery destroys objects scheduled for assault.

Tanks and self-propelled artillery, including heavy ones, function as a part of the attacking small units. The mission of the tanks and the self-propelled artillery is to support the infantry attack with fire and shock action; to consolidate, together with the infantry, captured areas; and to ward off enemy counterattacks.

Sapper small units conduct engineer reconnaissance, make passages through obstacles and barriers, blast buildings being defended by the enemy, make breaches in the walls and ceilings of buildings, clear mines from captured buildings, adapt buildings for defense, and set up obstacles.

To assure a concealed approach to the buildings under attack, the small units make wide use of smoke.

274. An attack in a city develops uninterruptedly until the opposite end of the city is reached or until the attacking troops link up with friendly troops. The attack is conducted in gardens, in orchards, in yards, through holes in walls, in subway tunnels and other underground structures, and, when necessary, in the streets.

275. During the battle, the regimental (battalion) commander directs his main efforts to capturing the most important objectives; he supports the battalions (companies) with artillery fire; when necessary, he reinforces them with additional means. He exploits success by the use of the second echelon (reserve).

To cover the flanks and ward off surprise enemy counterattacks from the rear, the regimental (battalion) commander sends out security and sets up ambushes at street intersections and at exits of underground installations. Captured installations and street intersections of importance are consolidated.

276. In conducting combat operations in a city, command and observation posts should be close to the small units. The regimental (battalion) commander selects an observation post in a position where the small units attacking the most important objectives can be observed.

Communication with small units is accomplished by radio, wire, mobile means of communication, and visual signals. Personal contact between the regimental (battalion) commander and subordinate commanders attains great importance.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

277. A commandant and a small alert unit are appointed to maintain order in an occupied city or part of a city. Patrolling activity is also organized.

The most important buildings and captured valuables are placed under guard. Fire fighting measures are established. A thorough reconnaissance is made of all captured buildings, which are cleared of the enemy and mines.

The local population is evacuated to the rear.

Units and small units may not be quartered in buildings which have not been checked by sapper small units, and they may not use captured property without permission.

278. In organizing offensive combat in a city, there are set up additional supplies of food, forage, and ammunition, especially heavy caliber shells needed for destroying objectives defended by the enemy.

Battalion aid stations receive additional medical personnel. Collection points for the wounded are organized in the companies in covered places safe from enemy fire.

The open movement of transportation facilities on streets subjected to enemy fire is to be avoided. Passageways between buildings (breaches in walls and fences) should be used for such movement.

### 13. FORCING A RIVER

279. The importance of a river as a barrier is determined by:

- the characteristics of the river (width, depth, and the swiftness of the current);
- the condition of its banks, bottom, and valley;
- the availability of fords and hydrotechnical installations;
- the character of the enemy's river defense;
- the weather and the season of the year.

280. The forcing of a river may take place:

- as a hasty crossing--with the successful development of an attack and with the pursuit of the enemy;
- as a prepared crossing--under conditions of direct contact with the enemy at a water line.

In all cases, success in forcing a river is attained by:

- the thorough organization and secrecy of the forcing preparation;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- the use of amphibious tanks and vehicles (tracked amphibious personnel carriers), the timely concentration of the greatest possible amount of river-crossing equipment, and the skillful use of this equipment during a forcing operation;

- the element of surprise of the operation, the swift seizure of bridgeheads, and the immediate development of the attack into the depth of the enemy's defense;

- the destruction and neutralization of the enemy's weapons;

- the adequate cover against enemy air attack given to the troops during the forcing and during operations in the captured bridgeheads.

281. The element of surprise in a forcing operation is achieved by the concealed concentration of the troops, by inconspicuously preparing and bringing up to the river river-crossing equipment, and by a swift and surprise crossing of the troops.

Smoke screens are used as concealment during the forcing of a river; they are put down on a wide front by various means.

The regiment (battalion) which is attacking in the first echelon or operating in the advance guard (forward detachment, leading detachment) should always try to make a hasty crossing of the river.

To accomplish this, the regimental (battalion) commander must pay special attention to supporting the activities of the reconnaissance and forward small units in making a hasty crossing, capturing bridges and crossings, and holding them. The regimental (battalion) commander must support, with all the men and materiel available in his command, those small units which have successfully crossed the river, and must resolutely employ their success for the hasty forcing of the river by the main forces of the regiment (battalion).

In a forcing operation, the regiment (battalion) is reinforced by amphibious tanks and vehicles (tracked amphibious personnel carriers), as well as by other crossing equipment, including that intended for the organization of ferry crossings.

Amphibious tanks are used for the close support of the infantry during a crossing operation.

282. The reconnaissance of the river and its approaches and the location of crossings, fords, and locally available crossing means are carried out in good time, during the advance to the river. Sappers, chemical warfare personnel, and amphibious vehicles are included in the composition of the small units which are conducting reconnaissance.

283. The following are used to advantage in a forcing operation: those sectors of the river having an accessible valley and banks; river bends turned to the side of the attacker; fords and islands; sites suitable for loading and unloading troops onto river-crossing equipment and for the assembly of bridges; and places where the enemy's defense is weaker or where he does not expect active operations on the part of the attacker. The bank held by the attacker should ensure excellent observation of the enemy, entrances and concealed approaches to crossing places, camouflage for the troops, and concentration of crossing equipment.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

284. In deciding to engage in a forcing operation, the regimental commander determines:

- the scheme of operations;
- the sectors in which the battalions (troops of cavalry) will undertake the forcing operation, and the points at which the regiment will make ferry crossings;
- the missions of the small units on the opposite bank, the establishment of the regiment's combat formation, the manner and order in which the forcing operation will be accomplished, and the composition of the forward small units of the first echelon;
- the distribution of the amphibious tanks and vehicles (tracked amphibious personnel carriers) and other crossing equipment among the small units;
- the departure position of the small units before the forcing operation begins;
- the order and time for loading the personnel and supplies of the small units onto the amphibious vehicles, and the order of moving the battalions up to the sectors being forced to the crossing points;
- the method of the artillery offensive;
- engineer support and camouflage measures;
- the organization of coordination among the small units making the crossing;
- the organization of antiaircraft, antitank, and antichemical defense;
- the site of the command (observation) post on one's own bank and on the opposite bank, and the tasks for the organization of communications;
- the organization of political support;
- the organization of material and technical support and of the evacuation of the wounded, and the order of crossing of the rear service small units, transport, and horses;
- the organization of the commandant's service.

285. After the battalion commander has received the order for a forcing operation, he makes his decision and indicates on the terrain, to his own and to attached (supporting) small units:

- the method and means of forcing the crossing;
- the departure position of the small units before forcing the crossing;
- the order and time of loading the personnel and equipment of the small units and the order of movement to the sector being forced and to the crossing points;
- the missions of the small units and the manner in which they are to coordinate on the opposite bank;
- the missions of the artillery, mortars, and machine guns in covering the battalion's crossing and supporting its operations on the opposite shore;
- the means of control and communication.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



The scheduling of personnel and materiel according to crossing equipment must be especially carefully worked out.

If necessary, the battalion commander sets up a ferry crossing point.

286. The decision for forcing a hasty river crossing is made during the advance to the river.

In this event, the scope of the measures to be taken to ensure the forcing operation is determined by the situation.

287. The organization of the regimental (battalion) combat formation depends on the scheme of operations on the opposite bank.

The regiment forces a river in a two-echelon or a one-echelon formation. Included in each echelon are rifle small units; artillery; tanks; self-propelled artillery; sapper, chemical warfare, flamethrower, and communications small units; and smoke equipment.

In a first echelon tank regiment, a reinforced battalion of submachine gunners usually forces the river in the first echelon.

288. The immediate mission of the regiment (battalion) is to capture a line on the opposite bank, at a distance of from 1.5 to 3 kilometers from the river, in order to make possible the assembly of bridges and to deny to the enemy observation of the crossing from ground observation posts. The subsequent mission is to reach the area in which the enemy's main artillery positions are located.

The combat tasks of the regiment (battalion) of the second echelon are determined by the mission received, the character of the river, and the enemy's defense.

289. The forward small units and the small units of the first echelon, which force the river on amphibious vehicles, load personnel and equipment on these vehicles at designated areas. From these areas the small units and the amphibious tanks attached to them, dispersed laterally in their own sectors, move through control points to the river and cross over to the opposite bank without halting.

After the forward small units and the small units of the first echelon have made the crossing, the amphibious vehicles and other crossing equipment are returned for the crossing of the following small units.

In the event that the river is being forced on crossing equipment which is not self-propelled, the forward small units and the small units of the first echelon make the crossing on assault crossing equipment, which they bring forward from the points where this equipment is concentrated. Concentration points for this equipment are set up in concealed areas not farther than 500 meters from the river.

Points for ferry crossings are organized in the sector in which the regiment is to force the crossing. At least one ferry crossing point each is required for a rifle regiment and a tank battalion.

The ferry crossing point includes ferries for crossing tanks, self-propelled artillery, and artillery; a control point is set up at a distance not farther than 1.5 kilometers from the river to control the passage of the small units to the crossing site.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

Commandants are selected from among the commanders of the small units of the engineer troops to direct the operation of the crossing equipment and to maintain the system established for using it in the sectors in which the battalions are forcing the river and at crossing points.

290. The regimental (battalion) commander should make timely deployment of his artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery, in order to support the forcing operation. He should move all crossing equipment to the river right behind the small units. When necessary, he should organize the collection of local and improvised crossing equipment and materials to construct crossings.

291. In organizing antitank defense during preparation of a forcing operation and during the course of such an operation, the regimental commander must:

- move the regimental artillery to the river, and move some of the batteries of the regimental artillery group to positions for direct fire;
- prepare fire by the regimental artillery group on areas of possible enemy tank concentration and on the likely directions of their counterattacks;
- reinforce the forward small units of the first echelons with amphibious tanks, accompanying guns, and antiaircraft, sapper, and chemical warfare small units;
- ensure the crossing, with the first echelon, of some of the antitank artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper small units equipped with mines;
- promptly deploy antitank artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery on the opposite bank to ward off counterattacks by enemy tanks.

292. In order to provide antiaircraft defense for the crossing, the regimental (battalion) commander makes use of organic and attached antiaircraft small units, and also covers the crossing with smoke. Some of the small antiaircraft units must be crossed to the opposite bank together with the forward small units. To deceive the enemy, smoke screens are laid down, by order of the division commander, at false crossing points.

293. In forcing a crossing, the actions of all commanders and small units must be distinguished by courage, broad initiative, and determination.

The advance guard (leading detachment, forward detachment) or the battalions (companies) of the first echelon, which have moved up to the river with their attached small units under the cover of artillery, mortar, tank, and self-propelled artillery fire, make a hasty crossing. They utilize captured bridges and fords, amphibious vehicles and other standard equipment, as well as local and improvised crossing equipment; force the river, from the march hastily, at several places; and seize the line assigned them on the enemy side of the river, assuring the crossing of the remaining forces of the regiment (battalion).

The forcing operation is supported by the fire of all the artillery, mortars, tanks, self-propelled artillery, machine guns, and by air strikes; it is also covered by the fire of antiaircraft small units and by smoke.

The regimental artillery group neutralizes and destroys the enemy's weapons located on the opposite bank, covers the flanks of the small units which have crossed, and prevents enemy counterattacks. The regimental (battalion) artillery and a part of the regimental artillery group move forward to direct fire positions and destroy

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

enemy weapons conducting fire directly on the crossing.

Aircraft neutralize and destroy artillery and mortars in their firing positions, and also the strong points situated directly on the bank or near it.

294. Reinforced with amphibious tanks, accompanying guns, and antiaircraft, sapper, and chemical warfare small units, the forward small units of the first echelon, as the first wave, force the river aboard amphibious vehicles and other standard equipment, as well as on local and improvised crossing equipment.

The amphibious tanks attached to the forward small units, while swiftly moving forward, lay down fire, while afloat, on the enemy weapons and personnel who are blocking the crossing.

After forcing the river, the forward small units seize the enemy bank and destroy the surviving enemy weapons there. They then move forward to a line which prevents the conduct of enemy rifle and machine gun fire on the river. They consolidate on this line and support the crossing of the remaining small units of the first echelon.

Sapper small units, which have crossed with the forward small units, construct obstacles to consolidate the lines seized; they also clear and mark passages through enemy obstacles and prepare spots for moorings and piers.

295. The beginning of a forcing operation (H-hour) is the moment the forward small units push off from their own shore.

The remaining small units of the first echelon, with attached artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery, cross immediately behind the forward small units.

The battalions of the first echelon, having crossed to the opposite bank, immediately go over to the attack and continue moving forward without stopping.

296. Artillery support for the attack is organized to the depth of the regiment's subsequent mission. It begins when the small units of the first echelon which have crossed the river start their attack, and takes the form of a rolling barrage or successive concentrations of fire.

The shift of fire from the first line of the rolling barrage (successive concentrations of fire) takes place on a signal by the regimental (battalion) commander who has crossed to the opposite bank.

The weapons detailed for direct fire, including heavy caliber guns, continue, from their own bank, to destroy enemy weapons and defensive installations.

Accompanying guns and batteries, having crossed to the opposite bank, immediately open fire on the enemy who is blocking the forward movement of the small units.

297. The second echelon, with attached small units, crosses immediately behind the first echelon.

The regimental artillery group crosses to the opposite bank in such a manner that the greater portion of the group can continuously support the crossing and the activities of the small units of the regiment (battalion) on the opposite bank.

Forward battery observation posts with communication equipment are deployed on the opposite bank simultaneously with the forward small units.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

If the crossing is unsuccessful at one point (sector), the small units of the regiment (battalion) may be sent to another point (sector), where the crossing is developing successfully. A reserve of crossing equipment is also concentrated at the same place.

298. The regimental commander's command post on the near bank is selected as close as possible to the river.

The regimental commander personally directs the crossing of the first echelon and crosses with it to the opposite bank. The regimental headquarters crosses to the opposite bank after the crossing of the first echelon. The battalion commander and his staff cross to the opposite bank behind the forward small units.

299. Before the beginning of the forcing operation, communications are established between the regimental commander and the commandants of the forcing sectors and crossing points, the points where the crossing equipment is concentrated, the control points through which the small units pass for the crossing, the small units in the departure position before the crossing operation, and the attached and supporting small units (units).

Radio and wire communications and visual signals are set up with the small units which have made the crossing. Small communications units, designated for the organization of radio and wire communications across the river and on the far bank, are crossed together with the forward small units.

300. The regimental commander gives special attention to the organization of the commandant's service at the places where the loading of personnel and equipment takes place, on routes of movement to crossings, and also at the crossing points and in battalion crossing sectors.

Commandants' posts, detailed on the instructions of the regimental staff, carry out the commandant's service at loading points and on routes of movement to crossings; the commandant's service at crossing points and in battalion crossing sectors is carried out by small units of engineer troops.

#### 14. JOINT REGIMENTAL (BATTALION) OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS WITH UNITS (SHIPS) OF THE NAVY

301. Joint operations of a regiment (battalion) with units (ships) of the Navy may be carried out in the case of:

- a landing by the regiment (battalion) as part of a landing force on an enemy-held coast;
- the landing of a battalion as the forward detachment of a landing operation;
- the attack of a regiment (battalion) along a seacoast or the bank of a large river;
- the attack of a regiment (battalion) with the aim of reaching the coast of a sea (river).

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

302. The width of a landing sector of a regiment (battalion) depends on the character of the enemy defense, the mission of the landing force and its composition, the landing conditions, and the character of the terrain. Depending on the situation, a regiment carries out a landing on a sector up to 4 km in width; a battalion, up to 1 km.

The immediate mission of the regiment (battalion) is the seizure of the positions of the enemy's regimental reserves. The subsequent mission is to reach the area of his main artillery positions.

303. Preliminary preparation of the regiment (battalion) for landing operations includes:

- the training of small units in embarking and in loading combat equipment and cargoes onto landing craft and in debarking (unloading) from them in a port with facilities and on a beach without facilities;

- the conduct of joint exercises with officers of the regiment (battalion) and officers of the ships to solve questions of coordination during landing and operations on the shore;

- the training of small units in landing and conducting battle, on terrain resembling the sector of forthcoming operations.

304. The regimental (battalion) commander issues a combat order for the embarkation and the movement, as well as a combat order for the landing and the execution of the immediate and subsequent missions. Simultaneously, a coordination chart is worked out in the regiment for the assault landing and for the execution of the immediate and subsequent missions.

305. The regimental (battalion) commander, before the embarkation of small units onto ships, is obliged to:

- send out billeting personnel to report to the commandant of the embarkation point, as follows: one officer from the regimental staff, one officer from each infantry battalion (artillery battalion), and one noncommissioned officer from each company (battery);

- send to the designated embarkation points small covering units and small units for loading equipment and property on the ships;

- bring his small units to the embarkation points in accordance with the sequence of embarkation on the ship, and in such manner that the leading small units will arrive at the embarkation point at the appointed time.

In order to achieve secrecy of embarkation, it must be carried out during darkness; regardless of the time of embarkation, measures must be taken for concealment from enemy air observation.

306. Billeting personnel, as ordered by the embarkation point commandant, are directed to ships, where they precisely determine the procedure of embarking, loading, and distributing their small units and combat equipment. At the appointed time, billeting personnel meet their small units, assign them to ships, and indicate billeting areas.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

307. The regimental (battalion) commander, in agreement with the commandant of the embarkation point, usually assigns antiaircraft small units to the small covering units, and, if necessary, assigns artillery and rifle small units to the small covering units.

308. The composition of the small units [detailed] for the loading of combat equipment and property into ships depends on the loading conditions, the time allotted for loading, and the type of cargo.

309. On each ship must be billeted an entire small unit (battalion, company) with the small units attached to it. The embarkation of small units and the loading of all types of combat equipment, ammunition, and other cargo is carried out in reverse order of the forthcoming debarkation (unloading), in order to ensure a rapid debarkation (unloading) in accordance with the plan of the forthcoming action; reserves of ammunition and of cargo of one type are distributed on as many ships (craft) as possible.

Personnel are billeted in specially allotted quarters, and on deck. Weapons intended for repelling the enemy during the crossing by sea and for supporting the landing of the forward small units are located on the decks of the ships (craft).

In all cases where the use of the weapons of the landing force is contemplated during the voyage, the regimental (battalion) commander, on the orders of the landing commander (ship commander), is obliged to:

- assign missions to the weapons so detailed, and point out the sectors of fire in the ship's system of fire;
- establish the readiness of the weapons and a watch schedule;
- organize control of the weapons;
- ensure the weapons a supply of ammunition in addition to that intended for operations on shore.

310. During the approach to the landing sector, the regimental (battalion) commander must do the following:

- check the readiness of the small units for rapid debarkation from ships (craft) and for operations on shore;
- jointly with the naval commander responsible for landing the regiment (battalion), precisely determine landing points and small unit missions;
- take measures for the neutralization of enemy weapons interfering with the landing, by means of the fire of the landing force and, through the naval commander, by means of naval gunfire.

311. Small units of the regiment start to land directly after the forward detachment, developing without delay the success the forward detachment has achieved. Special attention is given to the rapid landing of tanks, self-propelled artillery, and other artillery.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

In case a landing is carried out on an unequipped beach, and landing craft are not able to approach all the way to the beach, small units are landed in the water if its depth does not exceed one meter.

Tanks and self-propelled artillery are unloaded in the water when the depth and bottom permit them to move to the beach under their own power.

312. The regimental commander and his staff go ashore behind the first echelon of the main forces; the battalion commander, with his staff, goes ashore after the forward small units of the battalion.

After landing, the regimental (battalion) commander must do the following:

- establish communication with the forward detachment and with naval gunfire spotting posts;
- detail the situation, the missions of the small units on shore, and also the method of coordination among small units;
- take measures for the development of the success of the forward detachment, for the consolidation of the captured beachhead, and for securing the flanks of the regiment (battalion);
- direct the efforts of the regiment (battalion) toward the execution of the immediate and subsequent missions.

313. The battalion detailed as the forward detachment is reinforced by tanks (including amphibious), self-propelled artillery, artillery, small units of marines, and sapper and chemical small units.

Small units of marines are usually landed as the first wave of the forward detachment, and are reinforced by amphibious tanks and small units of sappers, with the mission of taking the beach in the sector of the landing point, destroying the enemy's weapons, removing obstacles, and supporting the landing of the forward detachment.

The forward detachment can take and hold a beachhead up to 2 km in width and up to 3 km in depth.

Directly behind the small units of the first wave, the remaining small units of the forward detachment are landed with the mission of developing the gains of the small units of the first wave, seizing a beachhead, supporting the landing of the succeeding echelons, and repelling enemy counterattacks.

Naval gunfire spotting posts, with means of communication, are detailed from ships to the forward detachment in order to adjust fire and designate targets.

During the battle for the landing the commander of the forward detachment is obliged:

- during the approach to the shore: to define the landing points and to study the actions of the enemy and of the small units of the first wave; to insure the rapid landing of small units of the battalion from landing equipment onto the shore; to take measures to neutralize, by means of fire from the landing forces and naval gunfire, enemy weapons interfering with the landing;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- after the landing on the beach: to establish communication with the small units of the first wave, with naval gunfire spotting posts, and with the landing commander; to define the situation, the missions of the small units on shore, and the manner of coordination among them; to take measures to develop the gains of the small units of the first wave and to secure the flanks of the forward detachment.

314. When a regiment is acting as an independent landing force, the regimental commander is designated as the landing force commander [komandir desanta]. For the execution of tasks in regard to the movement and landing of troops, a landing commander [komandir vysadki] is designated from among the naval commanders.

The regimental commander and the landing commander together work out the plan of operations for the landing force, in which provision is made for the following: the general purpose of the operations; the immediate and subsequent missions of the landing force on shore; the sector and individual landing points (primary and alternate); the composition of the forward detachment and its missions; the composition of the landing echelons; artillery support during the landing and during the conduct of the battle ashore; the organization of coordination; the time and place of concentration of the landing force and transport; the plan and order of embarkation on the craft; the procedure for the movement of the landing force by sea; the organization of reconnaissance of all types; the organization of control and communications; the method of transporting materiel, and the evacuation of the wounded and sick and of unserviceable materiel by sea; the organization of a landing base [baza vysadki] and its defense.

The protection of the landing force from attacks by sea and air is carried out by order of the senior officer.

The regimental commander is directly subordinate to the landing [vysadki] commander from the moment of receipt of the order of embarkation until the completion of the regiment's debarkation ashore. He is located on the same ship with the landing commander until he debarks. The commanders of small units on ships (craft) have the same relationship to corresponding ship (craft) commanders.

315. During the approach to the landing sector, the landing points of the small units may, depending upon the situation, be changed by the landing commander together with the commander of the regiment, depending on the mission given to the landing force for operations ashore and also with consideration for the swiftness and ease of debarking the landing force.

The final decision concerning the choice of landing points is taken by the landing commander [komandir vysadki].

316. During the advance of the regiment (battalion) along a seacoast or the bank of a large river, as well as from the depth of its own territory to a seacoast (river bank), ships and naval aviation are drawn in according to the plan of the senior commander for the destruction of enemy ground targets and for the security of the regiment's (battalion's) flanks and rear from blows of enemy naval forces and aviation.

During the organization of coordination with ships of the Navy provision is made for the following:

- further detailing of lines and objectives against which naval gunfire must be conducted;

- signals for requesting, shifting, and ceasing fire, and also signals by which the regiment (battalion) can designate its front line;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



- the method of establishing communications with units of marines operating in the direction of the advance of the regiment (battalion).

For insuring the coordination of the regiment (battalion) with units (ships) of the Navy, it is necessary, on a mutual basis, to send out liaison officers with radio sets, common conversation tables, and tables of signals, and also to ensure the timely mutual exchange of information concerning the situation ashore and at sea.

## 15. PECULIARITIES OF ATTACK IN FORESTS

317. An attack in a large forest is distinguished by the following characteristics:

- the difficulty of observation and of the adjustment of artillery and mortar fire;
- the complexity of the massed employment of tanks;
- the difficulty of observation from the air, of conducting aimed air bombing and firing;
- the complexity of carrying out coordination and control of troops during battle in the depths of the forest;
- the possibility of the wide use by the enemy of timber obstacles in conjunction with mined obstacles;
- the possibility of forest fires.

The forest favors the concealed approach and deployment of troops and simplifies preparation of the departure area for an attack. During operations in a forest the assembly of troops on roads, lanes, and in clearings should be avoided.

The correct evaluation of these characteristics by the troops, and the timely adoption of measures for supporting combat operations in a forest makes it possible to overcome most rapidly the difficulties encountered.

Small units must be prepared to conduct combat operations in a forest, must know how to orient themselves and correctly maintain their direction of movement, and also must be able quickly to surmount various timber obstacles.

The control of small units during an attack in a forest requires that the receipt of reports from them, and the disseminating of information to them concerning the situation, be more frequent than usual. It also requires special measures for determining the position of small units and for the regulation of their movement, and requires that the observation and command posts be closer to the small units.

318. During the preparation of offensive combat, one of the most important tasks of reconnaissance is the establishment of the exact trace of the main line of resistance of the main (first) defensive zone of the enemy and the determination of the presence of strong points, defensive installations, and obstacles in the depth of defense, as well as of new roads or cross-country routes.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

319. During the organization of an attack in a forest, the regimental (battalion) commander, aside from the usual questions, is obliged to anticipate the following:

- measures for orientation, for maintaining the indicated direction of attack, and for designating the location of small units;
- reorganizing the combat formation of the regiment (battalion) for operations in the depth of the forest;
- the peculiarities of coordination between infantry, tanks, self-propelled artillery, artillery, aviation, and sapper small units;
- measures for overcoming obstacles, especially for tanks, self-propelled artillery, and artillery;
- the method of making an exit from the forest;
- methods of combatting forest fires;
- measures for the destruction of enemy small units remaining in the rear or those which have penetrated into the rear.

320. The combat formation of a regiment (battalion) during an attack in a forest is usually organized into two echelons.

The second echelon and the reserve advance in extended order prior to their commitment.

Directions of advance are usually indicated to battalions (companies) as azimuths.

Small units are supplied with compasses; when necessary, guides are provided.

For closing up a combat formation, maintaining lateral communications, and restoring coordination, the commander of the regiment (battalion) designates phase lines. On roads and lanes and in clearings, clearly visible markers defining the location of a given point and the directions to inhabited points are placed according to the degree of advance of the attacking small units. Signals are established for the designation of the position of one's small units.

Infantry close support tanks and self-propelled artillery usually are attached to companies and advance in their combat formations, primarily along roads and clearings.

In a thin forest and on terrain accessible to tanks, the tanks may attack along the entire front of attack of the rifle small units which they are supporting.

321. During an attack on an enemy defending the fringe of a forest, the regimental (battalion) commander is obliged to organize in first priority the seizure of outthrust sectors of the forest.

Seizure of a small wood (separate grove) is usually carried out by surrounding it and destroying the enemy located therein.

322. During the development of an attack in the depth of a forest, the regimental (battalion) commander is obliged to do the following:

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

- have strong reconnaissance with the aim of protecting the advancing regiment (battalion) from enemy flank attacks; organize all-around security and, if necessary, move the second echelon and the reserves up closer to the combat formations of the first echelon;

- carefully check the direction of attack of the small units;

- organize the combing of the forest;

- reassign mortars, a considerable part of the regimental artillery group, and sapper small units to battalions (companies);

- employ the battalion and regimental artillery, and also guns of the division artillery for direct fire.

The regimental (battalion) commander retains under his direct control a part of the artillery, primarily howitzers, and some of the mortars to neutralize and destroy enemy strong points in the depth of the forest and to support the attack of the battalions (companies).

Combing of the forest is conducted by small units assigned from the battalions. They destroy the enemy in ambushes, and also clear individual soldiers and groups of the enemy from trees by means of machine gun and submachine gun fire.

323. In the depth of a forest, it is necessary to strive for close and wide envelopments of the defending enemy, even if only by small units. Strong points covering important roads are attacked simultaneously from the flanks and from the front with the support of artillery (mortar), tank, and self-propelled artillery fire.

Enemy weapons on lanes and roads are destroyed by the fire of guns designated for direct fire, or by fire from tanks and self-propelled artillery.

The most important crossroads and lanes which have been seized are consolidated and defended by specially assigned small rifle units with attached machine guns and individual field pieces.

324. Before leaving the forest, the regimental (battalion) commander must organize before-hand reconnaissance of the enemy and of the character of the terrain lying ahead, and must also anticipate the reorganization of his combat formation to avoid losses from sudden enemy fire.

After leaving the forest, the attack continues without interruption in conformity with the mission received.

325. During an attack in wooded-swampy terrain, careful reconnaissance of the passability of swamps is carried out. For the destruction of the enemy who is occupying defiles, corduroy roads, crossings, and road junctions, the regimental (battalion) commander organizes a turning movement (envelopment), after which he destroys the enemy by operations against the flank and rear in conjunction with an attack from the front. If it is impossible to carry out a turning movement and an envelopment, an attack from the front is carried out.

In overcoming swamps, small units utilize travois, light planked and staked flooring, and brushwood mats. Combat and transport vehicles are provided with means for improving their performance [prokhodimost].

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

Sapper small units and, when necessary, rifle small units are attached to artillery, heavy mortars, tanks, and self-propelled artillery for ensuring their advance.

326. Rear service small units of the regiment are located closer to the combat formations of the battalions. When the number of roads is limited, the rear service small units of battalions are located close to the roads.

## 16. PECULIARITIES OF ATTACK IN WINTER

327. Snow cover and extreme cold substantially change terrain and natural obstacles.

The following peculiarities exert an influence on troop operations in winter:

- deep snow makes maneuver of troops more difficult; therefore, roads increase in importance;
- the short day and unsatisfactory meteorological conditions limit the participation of aviation on the field of battle;
- camouflage of troops is more difficult;
- the importance of inhabited points and forests as protection from the cold is increased;
- frozen ground hampers the enemy in quickly creating a defense on new lines;
- ice makes rivers and swamps passable;
- snow increases visibility by day and by night.

The proper evaluation of these peculiarities and the timely adoption of measures permit offensive operations to be carried on with no less results in winter than in summer.

328. For lessening the influence of the negative characteristics of winter on the operations of troops, it is necessary to:

- provide for special measures for camouflage of the troops;
- carry out measures for the heating and feeding of personnel, for maintaining the combat readiness of weapons, equipment, and various kinds of vehicles, and also for caring for horses;
- use skis and ski-sleds, and also clear the roads.

329. Long winter nights, snowfalls, snowstorms, fog, and intense cold must be utilized for surprise operations, turning movements, envelopments, and the encirclement of the enemy. In this connection it should be noted that a well organized offensive by even insignificant forces can lead to the complete rout and destruction of the enemy.

Operations for wearing down the enemy have special importance for a successful attack in winter. These are carried out through the destruction, by artillery and

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

aviation, of inhabited points in the enemy disposition. The aim is to deprive the enemy of the possibility of using them for warming his personnel and organizing a defense.

330. During the organization of a winter attack, the commander of a regiment (battalion), besides the usual measures, is obliged to do the following:

- provide in good time for the construction and camouflage of trenches, communication trenches (including snow trenches), heated shelters for the warming of personnel, and shelters for equipment in the departure area for the attack;
- carefully study the enemy's obstacles, especially antitank mine fields, and also ascertain the presence and location of air holes in the ice, snowbanks, and other obstacles of ice or snow;
- determine the depth of snow, the thickness of ice on rivers and lakes, and establish the possibility of infantry operations without skis (in the cavalry, in addition, in mounted formation) and the accessibility of the terrain to tanks, self-propelled artillery, and artillery;
- provide for clearing roads and preparing cross-country routes;
- plan aid for artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery in overcoming deep snow, obstacles, and natural barriers;
- make sure that small units are provided with special camouflage equipment in time, and organize the painting of weapons, equipment, and transport to blend with the color of the terrain;
- take measures to protect personnel from cold and frostbite, and ensure the regular supply of hot food and tea to the small units;
- take measures for ensuring the rapid evacuation of wounded from the battlefield and for their protection from frostbite;
- plan measures for the maintenance in combat readiness of weapons, equipment, and transport; for this purpose the small units must be provided in time with winter lubricants, antifreeze, and equipment for warming and heating;
- ensure that small units have skis, snowshoes, travois, ski-sleds, and other equipment for movement in snow, as well as equipment for improving the performance of combat and transport vehicles.

331. During an attack in winter, under conditions of direct contact with the enemy, the attack of the regiment (battalion) is usually made without skis.

Machine guns, grenade launchers, mortars, and accompanying guns are mounted on ski-sleds. Attacking small units are reinforced by sapper small units to a greater extent than normal. The second echelon (reserve) of the regiment and, under favorable conditions, the second echelon of the battalion usually advance on skis.

During battle in the depth of the enemy's defense, the regimental (battalion) commander must strive for the close and wide envelopment of strong points, making wide use of small units on skis for this purpose.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

For reconnaissance and security, small units on skis with antitank equipment are designated; in this respect, it is necessary to pay special attention to roads leading into the flanks of the advancing small units.

332. When there is deep snow, consideration must be given to the difficulty of moving artillery to firing positions and the complexity of camouflaging firing positions. Ski-sleds are used for increasing the mobility of accompanying guns, and skis are used for personnel; track laying vehicles are used as prime mover. During battle in the depth of the enemy's defense, battalion and regimental mortars are widely employed.

333. The most favorable directions for an attack by infantry, tanks, and self-propelled artillery are in those sectors of terrain that have little snow cover.

When the snow cover is deep, paths for movement into the attack are cleared for infantry close support tanks and self-propelled artillery.

334. The regimental (battalion) aid station must be located closer to the combat formations in heated rooms and tents. For carrying the wounded from the battle field and for their evacuation, additional litter-bearers are detailed. They are provided with travois, ski-sleds, and warm clothing for the wounded. Measures are anticipated to prevent the wounded from freezing.

335. For the cross-country pursuit of a withdrawing enemy, infantry small units on skis, reinforced with tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper small units, are employed.

Battalions (companies) with attached artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery form in columns, move to the roads, and swiftly gain the flank and rear of the withdrawing enemy.

336. When organizing an attack during muddy seasons [Rasputitsy], the regimental (battalion) commander must do the following:

- plan measures to improve the performance of tracked and wheeled vehicles and artillery, and also plan measures for the organization of assistance to them during movement;
- reinforce battalions (companies) with sapper small units;
- plan measures to ensure the movement of small units across trenches and communication trenches, and swampy sectors of terrain;
- establish ahead of time additional supplies of ammunition, rations, and forage within small units;
- plan measures to protect weapons and equipment from mud;
- anticipate the use of animal-drawn and pack transport for bringing up supplies to small units, and the organization of the receipt of supplies by air.

During the attack, the regimental (battalion) commander must make timely preparation to repair bad stretches of roads and to construct cross-country routes. He must also organize assistance to guns and to combat and transport vehicles during their movement.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

## 17. PECULIARITIES OF ATTACK IN MOUNTAINOUS - WOODED TERRAIN

337. The following factors influence combat operations in mountains:

- the limited number of favorable roads and the difficulty of cross-country movement;
- the abundance of defiladed areas and concealed approaches;
- the difficulty of orientation;
- the peculiarities of a mountain climate;
- mountain rivers with their rapid currents, and sharp and frequent changes of water level;
- the screening effect of mountains upon the functioning of radios, radar, and sound ranging equipment.

338. A study of the peculiarities of mountainous-wooded terrain, a proper evaluation of them, and the timely taking of measures to support the operations of troops in mountains permit the most rapid overcoming of difficulties encountered.

It is necessary ahead of time to plan the outfitting of the troops with equipment and supplies for overcoming steep ascents, cliffs, mountain passes, descents, gorges, and rivers. Additionally, in high mountain areas, troops must be supplied with heating equipment and items of equipment for overcoming glaciers and snow fields.

Troops must be instructed in the peculiarities of mountain combat operations, and in the peculiarities of conducting fire and of fire direction in mountain conditions.

339. The breakthrough of an enemy defense and attack in a wide valley or on a mountain plateau are conducted on the basis of general principles.

An attack along a narrow valley is conducted simultaneously with an attack along one or both of its sides, primarily along the ridge lines, with the purpose of moving into the rear of the enemy who is defending the heights and passes. For a successful attack along a narrow valley, a regiment (battalion) with part of its forces seizes, in first priority, adjoining heights which flank the valley. The seizure of these heights is accomplished by the coordinated actions of small units attacking simultaneously along the valley and along the ridge line.

When attacking to seize a mountain pass (passage), the regiment (battalion), in first priority, seizes the heights which dominate the pass and then, by a rapid outflanking maneuver, captures the pass (passage).

On terrain where heights adjoining a pass (passage) are difficult to approach, the seizure of the pass (passage) is accomplished usually by an attack from the front, while the adjoining heights are seized by a flank attack after the seizure of the pass (passage).

The turning and envelopment of the enemy flanks, in conjunction with a frontal attack, are normal operations of a regiment (battalion) in mountains.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

340. The combat formation of the regiment (battalion) when attacking in mountains depends upon the terrain and the mission. It is usually a two-echelon formation.

When attacking in mountainous-wooded terrain, particular attention is given to security of flanks, and the organization of the antiaircraft, antitank, and antichemical defense of the small units in passes (passages), at river crossings, and at road junctions.

341. When attacking in mountains, small units must be prepared for prolonged independent operations separate from the main forces and adjacent units. Decisiveness, initiative, and skillful employment of the peculiarities of mountain terrain are demanded from small units.

Battalions (companies) operating in separate directions are given greater independence. For this purpose, they are reinforced with artillery (particularly with howitzers), mortars, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper and chemical warfare small units. The attack of a regiment (battalion) in mountains is supported by air strikes requested by the regimental commander.

342. When organizing air attack in mountains, the regimental (battalion) commander, in addition to resolving the usual questions, must do the following:

- carefully study the accessibility of the terrain and the favorable direction for operations of the infantry, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and artillery;
- determine the strength and composition of the small units assigned for attack in separate directions, their missions, and also anticipate their support by the fire of the regimental artillery group;
- coordinate, in point of time and phase lines, the actions of the small units attacking along the valley and along the ridge line, and also the actions of the small units operating in separate directions;
- plan measures for the security of the flanks and rear;
- provide the small units which are operating in difficult directions with guides, and supply them with pack animals, ropes, grapples, pick-mattocks, ladders, pulleys, and, in snow fields, with snow glasses;
- provide for the orientation and marking of locations of small units;
- provide for the engineer support of the attack;
- organize the regulation of movement in passes, at road junctions, and on one-way sectors of roads;
- plan the dispatch of a march support detachment;
- provide small units which are operating in separate directions with a reserve of ammunition, rations, forage, water, heating fuel, and pack transport;
- plan measures for keeping the wounded warm;
- study weather changes and make provision for supplying warm clothing to per-

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



sonnel of the small units which are operating in areas of high mountains;

- provide for warning of, and protection from, avalanches and flooded rivers.

343. Regimental (battalion) and antitank artillery, and also separate guns and batteries of the division artillery, are attached to battalions (companies) and advance within their combat formations. Special significance is attached to separate guns and batteries emplaced on commanding heights. Mountain-pack and mortar batteries must accompany small units under any conditions of mountainous-wooded terrain.

344. In mountains, infantry close support tanks and self-propelled artillery advance in close coordination with rifle small units, primarily along roads, valleys, and river beds.

It is expedient to move some of the tanks and self-propelled artillery to the crests of ridges for operations jointly with rifle small units along the ridges and for the seizure of passes.

345. In the course of an attack, communications with the small units operating in separate directions are organized by establishing two-station radio nets. In case of necessity, intermediate stations are established.

Wire communications are established along roads, ridge lines, valleys, and gorges. In addition, signalling and mobile means of communication are widely employed.

346. Sapper small units are attached to battalions (companies) for preparing cross-country routes of march and paths, for eliminating obstacles on roads, for constructing detours around bad stretches of road, for constructing river crossings, and crossings over deep barriers, for preparing and maintaining roads on ascents and descents, for making passages through obstacles, for erecting obstacles during the consolidation of captured lines (objectives), and for locating water and preparing water supply points.

347. Upon detecting an enemy withdrawal, the regimental (battalion) commander organizes pursuit along valleys and ridges parallel to the direction of the enemy withdrawal. He details tank small units with tank-borne infantry for the seizure of passes, gorges, river crossings, and heights along the routes of enemy withdrawal.

To block the enemy withdrawal, artillery conducts fire along road junctions, river crossings, defiles, and passes.

348. A mountain rifle regiment (battalion) possesses high maneuverability and usually is employed to:

- gain routes parallel to the direction of an enemy withdrawal and daringly penetrate into his rear in order to seize passes (passages), bridges, and road junctions, and to destroy enemy roads and bases;
- turn and deeply envelop enemy flanks by using difficult mountain terrain possessing weakly developed communication routes;
- combat enemy airborne landings carried out in areas of high mountains;
- protect the flanks of the main grouping of one's troops.

~~SECRET~~

349. A successful attack by a mountain rifle regiment (battalion) is effected by turning and enveloping the primary enemy strong points and by seizing heights, peaks, and cliffs which dominate them, and also by gaining the flank and rear of the enemy.

The combat formation of a mountain rifle regiment (battalion) in an attack in difficult areas in high mountains depends upon the terrain and the mission being fulfilled.

When a one-echelon formation is used, the regimental reserve usually comprises two reinforced companies, while a battalion reserve usually comprises up to a reinforced company. It is sometimes advantageous to dispose the reserve by companies (by platoons) in the directions of operations of the battalions (companies).

350. To provide for the delivery of ammunition, rations, forage, water, medicine, and heating fuel, and also for evacuation, wide use is made of pack animals, teams of porters, transport aircraft, and helicopters [vertolëty] in areas difficult to traverse.

#### 18. PECULIARITIES OF ATTACK IN DESERTS AND STEPPES

351. When attacking in deserts and steppes, the following peculiarities must be taken into account:

- the absence of water and heating fuel over great areas;
- the possibility of cross-country movement;
- the almost total absence of inhabited areas and local resources;
- the absence of permanent communication lines;
- the difficulty of concealment and of orientation;
- the sharp variations in temperature during a twenty-four-hour period, and sandstorms which make it difficult to conduct observation and to land aircraft;
- the harmful influence of sand and dust on the operation of engines and moving parts of vehicles, and on armament, means of communication, and other technical equipment;
- the presence of salt lakes and salt marshes.

352. An attack in deserts and steppes usually is conducted along separate directions. In the main direction it is always necessary to have a sufficiently strong grouping of men and materiel.

The strength and composition of troops for operations in separate directions are determined by the combat mission and the possibility of their material and technical support, in first priority with water, heating fuel, and fuel and lubricants.

~~SECRET~~

353. The absence of a continuous front of defense and the possibility of cross-country movement in deserts and steppes permits the widest maneuver of troops and allows the main blow, as a rule, to be struck in the enemy flank and rear primarily by tanks and mechanized troops. In this manner, particularly important objectives are seized in the depth of the enemy's defense (water sources, bases, inhabited areas).

In organizing a combat formation, special attention must be given to protecting open flanks. This is done by disposing behind open flanks strong second echelons and reserves, prepared to repel an enemy attack by active operations.

More careful organization of reconnaissance, all-around security and observation, and antitank defense are demanded from the troops. Particular attention must be given to the organization of antiaircraft defense.

354. Small units operating in separate directions must be reinforced with artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper and chemical warfare small units, and must be supported by aviation, in order to attain the maximum independence.

355. When preparing an attack in deserts and steppes, the regimental (battalion) commander, in addition to resolving the usual problems, must do the following:

- determine the azimuths of the direction of the attack;
- plan the establishment of artificial orientation points in his rear, as the small units advance;
- provide for the wide use of radio, mobile means of communication, and means of signalling for the control of subordinate units and, in addition, in the regiment, provide for the employment of liaison officers;
- provide guns, tanks, and self-propelled artillery with means of camouflage;
- increase the number of weapons for employment against low-flying enemy aircraft;
- provide small units with a reserve of water;
- organize the search for water, the establishment of water supply points, and the guarding of available water sources.

356. During an attack in deserts and steppes, the regimental (battalion) commander utilizes the absence of a continuous enemy front of defense and the possibility of cross-country movement for maneuver and for an attack on the enemy flank and rear. He directs the efforts of his attacking small units toward the seizure of particularly important objects in the depth of the enemy defense (water sources, inhabited areas), the seizure of which can decide the outcome of battle. He also widely employs night operations for the development of success and of maneuver with the purpose of enveloping, turning, and encircling the enemy.

The regimental (battalion) commander devotes special attention to the careful organization of reconnaissance, and of antitank and antiaircraft defense, the protection of open flanks, and all-around security and observation.

357. When organizing the rear, the regimental (battalion) commander provides for the supply of water and heating fuel and establishes rates of their expenditure.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

The basic task in inspecting the sanitary conditions of an area is the investigation of water sources and their purification.

358. The condition of weapons, motors, and moving parts of vehicles must be regularly checked. The air filters of the engines are systematically cleaned of dust and sand. Before battle, weapons must be wiped dry.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

CHAPTER VII

PURSUIT

359. The object of the pursuit is the encirclement and destruction or capture of the withdrawing enemy.

In anticipation of an enemy withdrawal, the regimental (battalion) commander, in advance, is required:

--to increase reconnaissance in order to determine the beginning of the enemy withdrawal and to capture prisoners to verify this information;

--to determine the manner of transition to the pursuit and the missions of the battalions (companies), the artillery, and the mortars;

--to anticipate the employment of tanks together with tank-borne infantry and sappers for the seizure of important lines (objectives) along the routes of the enemy withdrawal;

--to plan the possibility and manner of utilizing transport;

--to note cross-country routes and the places and manner of making passages through obstacles.

360. Reconnaissance conducted by the regiment (battalion) is intensified, especially at night, in order not to miss the beginning of an enemy withdrawal, and to prevent the enemy from breaking contact with the small units of the regiment (battalion). In order to accomplish this, raids are conducted, ambushes are set up, communications interception [podslushivaniye] is organized, and, on the instructions of the division commander, reconnaissance in force is carried out.

In order to determine the beginning and direction of the enemy withdrawal, it is especially important to procure timely information by means of air reconnaissance.

During the pursuit, the regimental commander sends out separate reconnaissance patrols or a reconnaissance detachment in order to determine the direction of the enemy withdrawal, the approach of enemy reserves, especially tanks, the existence of obstacles, the passability of roads and bridges, and the preparation and occupation of new defensive lines by the enemy. For reconnaissance, a battalion commander sends out separate reconnaissance patrols.

361. The regimental (battalion) commander, having ascertained the beginning of a withdrawal, begins the pursuit independently. He immediately notifies the division (regimental) commander of the start of the enemy withdrawal and of the decision which he himself has made.

The regimental (battalion) commander, during the pursuit, must strive not to permit the loss of contact between the enemy and the small units of the regiment (battalion) and must not give the enemy the opportunity to organize resistance on a new line.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

362. Battalions (companies), for the pursuit, are assigned deeper missions by lines (objectives), the capture of which ensures the maneuver of small units for the encirclement of the enemy and delays his withdrawal.

363. The regiment (battalion), operating decisively and boldly, destroys the enemy's covering small units, moves out on routes parallel to the direction of withdrawal, and conducts unrelenting pursuit by day and by night with maximum effort in order to gain the flanks and the rear of the withdrawing enemy and destroy him.

If the enemy has hurriedly organized a defense on a successive line, the regiment (battalion) attacks the enemy from the march.

364. Part of the tanks attached to the regiment, with tank-borne infantry, penetrates the gaps between the withdrawing small units of the enemy, destroys them piecemeal, captures important lines (objectives) on the enemy's routes of withdrawal, and refuses the enemy the opportunity to organize resistance on a new line.

Part of the artillery attached to the regiment is reallocated to the battalion commanders. Separate guns and batteries must move forward daringly and destroy the withdrawing enemy with direct fire.

Sapper small units eliminate enemy obstacles, establish detours at destroyed bridges and sectors of roads, mine the enemy routes of withdrawal, and prepare obstacles on avenues of likely counterattacks by enemy tanks and infantry.

365. The regimental (battalion) commander, during the pursuit, must give special attention to flank security. Security, reinforced by antitank means, is sent out in the most threatened directions. When a threat exists, the regimental commander immediately moves the artillery-antitank reserve in the threatened direction.

366. During the pursuit, the regimental (battalion) commander controls his small units by radio and mobile means of communication; in addition, in the regiment, liaison officers are used. The regimental commander, together with his staff, moves at the head of the column of the main body of the regiment.

Units and small units must be prepared at any time to use designated signals to indicate their position to friendly aircraft.

367. On instructions of the division commander, forward detachments are sent out to capture important lines and objectives on the enemy routes of withdrawal.

368. Before moving out, the commander of a forward detachment is required: to clarify the mission received, to make a map study of the terrain and of the route of movement, to determine the organization of the march formation and the methods for maintaining communications, to determine the likely lines of clash with the enemy, and to select the method of operations of the forward detachment.

A forward detachment, not joining combat with the enemy covering forces, bypasses them, seeking to reach quickly the rear of the main forces of the withdrawing enemy and to seize the designated line or objective on the enemy routes of withdrawal. [sic]

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

If the line (objective) is occupied by the enemy, the forward detachment, with the fire of its artillery, mortars, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and machine guns, neutralizes enemy weapons and, with a decisive attack, captures the line (objective).

When the designated line (objective) is captured, the forward detachment must consolidate, send out reconnaissance, organize an all-around defense, and hold the line (objective) until a new mission is received.

369. In organizing a pursuit, special attention is given to supplying forward detachments with ammunition, fuel, and lubricants, and to reinforcing them with medical transport.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

## CHAPTER VIII

### DEFENSE

#### 1. GENERAL PRINCIPLES

370. Defense is a type of combat which troops employ to hold occupied positions, repulse the attack of superior enemy forces, and inflict great losses upon them, thus creating favorable conditions for the transition to a decisive offensive.

This can be achieved by the skillful utilization of favorable terrain conditions and their development in the engineer sense, by the degree of organization and the power of fire, by the firmness and stubbornness of the troops, and by the employment of counterattacks.

The defense must be insurmountable and active.

The regiment (battalion) has no right to abandon the position it occupies and to withdraw without an order from a senior officer.

371. Defense is employed:

- to gain the time needed for the concentration of men and materiel intended for an offensive;
- for the economic utilization of men and materiel in some directions, in order to build up a superiority of men and materiel in other directions;
- to secure the flanks of attacking forces;
- to consolidate captured lines and objectives;
- to repel counterattacks and counterblows of superior enemy forces.

372. The insurmountability of the defense consists in its stability, deep echelonment, and activity.

The defense must be:

- antiartillery, capable of weakening, to the maximum degree, the fire power of enemy artillery and mortars through inflicting great losses on them, and through the dependable provision of cover for the defending units and small units;
- antitank, capable of repelling the massed attacks of enemy tanks, and capable of destroying them in the event of their breakthrough into the depth of the defense;
- antiaircraft, capable of repelling the massed blows of enemy aircraft, and of inflicting significant losses on them;
- antiairborne, capable of preventing the drop (landing) of enemy airborne forces, and annihilating airborne forces which have dropped (landed);

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



--antichemical, capable of withstanding a prolonged enemy chemical attack;

373. Stability of the defense is achieved:

--by its deep echelonment;

--by the stubborn resistance in combat of units and small units, and by their preparation for the conduct of prolonged defensive combat;

--by a skillfully organized system of fire of all types, primarily artillery and mortar fire;

--by the correct selection of terrain lines, and the proper organization of the engineer preparation of the terrain;

--by concerting all types of fire with the system of antitank and anti-personnel obstacles;

--by the firm and uninterrupted control of units and small units;

--by the well prepared maneuver of units and small units laterally and from depth;

--by the camouflaging of engineer-type structures, and of units and small units.

374. Deep echelonment of the defense is achieved:

--by a multizoned construction of the defense, and by the distribution in depth of the position in each zone;

--by the arrangement in depth of the combat formation of the troops in a defensive zone and in its individual positions.

The echelonment of the defense should create a constantly growing opposition, capable of stopping an enemy penetration and of creating conditions favorable for his annihilation.

The echelonment of a regimental (battalion) combat formation must not be done at the expense of weakening the small units of the first echelon.

375. Activity of the defense is achieved:

--by constantly striking enemy manpower and materiel with all types of fire;

--by forcing the enemy to bow to one's will, and by creating for him unfavorable conditions for the conduct of battle;

--by the maneuver of small units, fire, antitank weapons, and engineer obstacles;

--by conducting reconnaissance raids, and by counteracting enemy reconnaissance;

~~SECRET~~

--by the conduct of courageous and resolute counterattacks.

Counterattacks are carried out on the decision of all commanders, for the purpose of destroying the enemy forces which have wedged into the defense and restoring the situation.

376. The system of fire in the defense consists in the creation of zones of continuous fire of all types in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone and in the depth of the defense, and in the ability to concentrate, on short notice, massed fire in any threatened direction or sector.

The system of fire is built on the coordination of all types of fire. It must insure the creation of flanking and cross fire of high density, and the rapid maneuver of weapons laterally and from depth.

The basis of the system of fire in the defense is the fire of artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, mortars, and machine guns, in combination with obstacles.

The effectiveness of fire in the defense is attained by its accuracy, massing, and sudden application.

All weapons of the defense must be ready for operation at night and in other conditions of limited visibility.

377. Depending on the situation, the defense may be organized in advance, out of direct contact with the enemy, or may be occupied as a result of the transition of one's forces to the defense under enemy pressure.

The regiment (battalion) may assume the defense on a normal or on a wide front.

378. In the defense, a regiment (battalion) together with attached and supporting artillery, with tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper and chemical small units, and utilizing advantageous conditions of the terrain, its engineer preparation, and fire power, is able to repel the advance of superior enemy forces and firmly hold the occupied sector (area) of terrain; in case the enemy succeeds in wedging into the defense, the regiment (battalion) is capable of destroying him with fire and counterattacks, and of restoring the situation.

379. A rifle (motorized rifle, mechanized, tank) regiment receives for the defense a defense sector; a battalion (company) receives a defense area.

In individual cases, for the defense of especially important objectives, a regiment may receive a defense area.

The width and the depth of a defense sector (area) depends on the mission of the regiment (battalion), its composition, and the character of the terrain.

When defending on a normal front, the defense sector of a regiment is, usually from 4 to 6 km wide (for a tank regiment--up to 4 km) and from 4 to 5 km deep; a battalion defense area is, on the average, up to 2 kilometers wide and up to 1.5 to 2 kilometers deep; a company defense area is 800 to 1000

~~SECRET~~

\_\_\_\_\_

meters wide and 400 to 600 meters deep.

380. The combat formation of a regiment in the defense is usually organized in 2 echelons. The combat formation of a regiment of the second echelon of a division is, as a rule, organized in a single echelon.

The combat formation of a rifle (motorized rifle) battalion is organized in two echelons or in one. The combat formation of a battalion of the second echelon is usually organized in one echelon.

In organizing a combat formation, and in the deployment of men and materiel in positions and in trenches, there must not be any standardized pattern.

381. Regimental sectors consist of battalion defense areas and anti-tank areas which are interconnected laterally and in depth by a single system of fire and obstacles.

The defense of a regiment of the first echelon is organized within the limits of the first and second positions of the main defensive zone.

The first (main) position is from 1.5 to 2 km in depth. It is defended by the battalions of the first echelon, for the purpose of inflicting a decisive defeat on the enemy, and of preventing the enemy from breaking through the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone.

The second position (regimental reserves) is from 1.5 to 2 km in depth, and is 2.5 to 3 km distant from the main line of resistance of the first position. It is defended by the second echelons of regiments and their reserves for the purpose of stopping and destroying enemy forces, which have broken through the first position, and for insuring a favorable departure position for counterattacks.

In certain cases, in order to deceive the enemy, and to withdraw our troops from the blows of enemy artillery, tanks, and aviation, the division commander may order the troops to be moved back from the first to the second position. If this is the case, a reinforced combat outpost is usually left at the first position. In this instance, the second position must be of greater than average depth.

The third position (division reserves) is from 1 to 2 km in depth, and is located 5 to 6 km from the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone. It is defended by the regiment of the second echelon and by the division reserves, for the purpose of preventing the enemy from penetrating into the depth of the defense, and for insuring a suitable departure position for counterattacks.

The basis of each position is the battalion areas of defense, which consist of company areas of defense, interconnected laterally and in depth by a single system of fire and obstacles.

382. The battalion areas of defense at each position are prepared with 3 or 4 trenches and with communication trenches, and are prepared for all-around defense. Battalion areas, touching each other, are interconnected by a system of trenches, which in turn are interconnected by communication trenches.

~~SECRET~~

The system of trenches and communication trenches must insure the rapid and concealed maneuver of the small units laterally and in depth, and also make it difficult for the enemy to uncover the disposition of the combat formations in the defense and the system of fire.

The first trench of the first position is the main line of resistance [perednyy kray] of the main defensive zone. A band of antitank and antipersonnel obstacles is created in front of it.

The main line of resistance of the main defensive zone must be selected, if it is at all possible, behind natural antitank barriers and must insure:

--good observation of the enemy, terrain, and the disposition of friendly small units;

--the best conditions for the organization of a system of small arms, artillery, and mortar fire, and for the creation of a zone of continuous fire of all types at a distance of up to 400 meters from the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone;

--concealment of the disposition of personnel and weapons, located on the main line of resistance;

--the possibility of conducting cross and flanking fire in front of the main line of resistance;

--the possibility of conducting fire, in front of the main line of resistance, by machine guns and direct fire weapons located in the depth of the defense, and also by tanks and self-propelled artillery.

The terrain in front of the main defensive zone should make it difficult for the enemy to conduct observation and to select concealed areas for the concentration of infantry and tanks, suitable artillery positions, and concealed approaches to the main line of resistance.

The second trench is dug at a distance of 200 to 300 meters from the first trench, so that the small units defending it can give fire support to the small units located in the first trench, can conduct fire against the enemy on the approaches to the main line of resistance, can cover the obstacles in front of them with fire, and can utilize the second trench for counterattacks.

The third trench is dug at a distance of 600 to 800 meters from the second trench, so that the small units defending it can conduct fire on the zone between the second and third trenches, on individual sectors, and in front of the main line of resistance, and can utilize the trench for counterattacks.

In addition, switch positions are created in the defense sector of the regiment. They are provided with one or two trenches which, on especially important directions, are reinforced with obstacles. When building switch positions, communication trenches, leading from the front to the rear, are utilized.

Communication trenches are constructed so that for each platoon there is at least one communication trench connecting the first trench with the

~~SECRET~~

second, and so that for each company there is at least one communication trench connecting the second trench with the third.

Communication trenches are utilized for the concealed maneuver of small units, for combatting enemy forces which have wedged into the defense, and for the evacuation of wounded and the supply of ammunition and rations.

In the construction of trenches and communication trenches, the relief of the terrain and the disposition of terrain features must be taken into consideration.

The trace of trenches and communication trenches must be such as to permit the conduct of flanking and cross fire from them.

Trenches which are dug in company and battalion defense areas are interconnected with the trenches of adjacent company and battalion defense areas. Junction points of trenches at the boundaries of a defense sector (area) are determined by the regimental (battalion) commander in mutual agreement with commanders of adjacent units (small units).

Firing positions are constructed for guns, mortars, tanks, and self-propelled artillery.

To camouflage the combat formations of the troops and the system of defense, dummy trenches may be dug in the intervals between the second and third trenches, and also between positions.

383. A forward position [peredovaya pozitsiya], equipped with trenches and communication trenches and protected by obstacles, may be created on instructions of the division commander, depending on the situation and conditions of the terrain, on separate, most important directions, at a distance of from 2 to 3 km in front of the main defensive zone. Sometimes, depending upon the conditions of the terrain, a forward position may be placed at an angle to the main defensive zone.

The forward position is defended by a reinforced combat outpost with the mission of deceiving the enemy as to the true configuration of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone, and of forcing him to deploy prematurely.

For the defense of the forward position, small units from the second echelons of the regiments are designated. A reinforced combat outpost may be designated in up to company strength, reinforced with tanks, artillery, self-propelled artillery, and sapper and flamethrower small units.

When a security zone exists, the forward position is regarded as its final [closest in] position. Forward detachments defending the security zone withdraw to the forward position and occupy on it previously prepared sectors, which are not occupied by the combat outpost.

It is the duty of the regimental (battalion) commander of the first echelon to organize coordination, to maintain uninterrupted communications with the small units occupying the forward position, and to support the conduct of the battle of the reinforced combat outpost with artillery and

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

mortar fire from temporary firing positions.

384. In the absence of a forward position, a combat outpost is sent out to protect the small units defending the first position of the main defensive zone against a sudden enemy attack, and to prevent the enemy from conducting reconnaissance. Up to a platoon is sent out from each battalion of the first echelon.

The combat outpost occupies a position located from 1 to 2 km in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone. The location of the small units assigned to the combat outpost is indicated by the regimental commander.

The small units which are assigned to the combat outpost are reinforced with machine guns, mortars, heavy grenade launchers, guns, and sapper small units with equipment for erecting obstacles, and also are supported by artillery and mortar fire from the main defensive zone.

The small units which are assigned to the combat outpost are controlled by the commanders of the battalions from which they were sent out. Reliable communications are established with the combat outpost.

385. Under conditions of direct contact with the enemy, a combat outpost is not sent out. In such cases, the regimental (battalion) commander assigns the tasks of combat security to the small units occupying the first trench of the first position. At night, these small units, in separate sectors, move observation posts and listening posts [sekrety] out ahead to the obstacles.

To protect the small units of the regiment (battalion) from sudden enemy attack, it is the duty of the regimental (battalion) commander:

- to organize continuous observation of the enemy;
- to establish the manner of warning the small units when there is an alarm;
- to determine the composition of small alert units and of weapons which are held in constant readiness to repel enemy attacks by day and separately by night;
- to establish the method of calling for artillery and mortar barrages;
- to determine the method of illumination of the terrain in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone;
- to establish uninterrupted control over the constant combat preparedness of the regiment (battalion).

386. Regimental artillery groups are created in the regiments of the first echelon of the division which are defending in the main direction. When the division has a sufficient reinforcement of artillery, regimental artillery groups are also created in regiments which are defending in a secondary direction, as well as in regiments of the second echelon.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

Regimental and battalion mortars are not included in the regimental artillery group.

Regimental and battalion artillery likewise is not included in the regimental artillery group, but is employed in battalion defense areas for direct fire. In case of necessity, part of the regimental artillery can also be employed in an antitank area and in the regimental artillery-antitank reserve.

Regimental and battalion mortars and artillery are taken into consideration when organizing the general system of fire in the defense.

The regimental commander usually designates up to one artillery (mortar) battalion of the regimental artillery group for the support of each first-echelon battalion.

Firing positions of the regimental artillery group are selected at a distance of 2 to 4 kilometers behind the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone, primarily on dangerous tank approaches. Part of the division artillery gun batteries which are included in the regimental artillery group occupy firing positions closer to the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone for the purpose of conducting direct fire against enemy tanks and self-propelled artillery. Artillery firing positions must be protected by antitank obstacles. Batteries designated to support the combat outpost conduct fire from temporary firing positions.

To deceive the enemy about the system of fire and the number and location of the artillery firing positions, roving guns (mortars) and batteries are employed and dummy firing positions and observation posts are constructed, all in accordance with the plan of the division commander. In addition to towed artillery pieces, self-propelled artillery may also be employed as roving guns.

When employing roving guns, several firing positions and concealed routes from one firing position to another are prepared for them.

387. To reinforce the antitank defense, small units of antitank and division artillery and also small units of tanks and of self-propelled artillery can be attached to battalions.

## 2. THE ORGANIZATION OF DEFENSE

388. The regimental (battalion) commander makes a decision for the organization of the defense on the basis of his mission, his estimate of the situation, and the results of reconnaissance.

The sequence of the regimental (battalion) commander's work in organizing the defense depends upon the mission, the distance of the enemy and his operations, the character of the terrain, and the available time.

When hurriedly taking up the defense, the regimental commander usually makes a decision and issues missions on the basis of a map reconnaissance; then, during his ground reconnaissance, he further details them on the terrain.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

In all cases, the assignment of missions must not hold up the movement of small units to assigned areas and their timely occupation of the defense.

When the defense is adopted in the absence of direct contact with the enemy, the regimental (battalion) commander organizes the defense under the cover of combat and local security.

When the defense is adopted under conditions of direct contact with the enemy, the regimental (battalion) commander organizes the defense under the cover of the fire of artillery, mortars, and the small units of the first echelon of the regiment (battalion).

389. The regimental (battalion) commander's reconnaissance, conducted before making a decision for the defense, has as its purpose:

- to define in detail on the terrain the regimental (battalion) defense sector (area) and the configuration of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone;

- to study the areas in which the enemy can occupy a departure position for an attack, and the approaches to the main line of resistance;

- to determine the most important areas of the terrain and terrain features, on the holding of which depends the stability of the defense as a whole;

- to plan the battalion (company) defense areas, the boundaries of battalion antitank centers of resistance узлов (company antitank strong points) within the defense areas, and the trace of the trenches and communication trenches;

- to plan the system of antitank, artillery, mortar, and machine-gun fire forward of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone and within the depth of the defense, and the areas of primary and alternate artillery and mortar firing positions;

- to determine the character, scale, and sequence of the works connected with the engineer preparation of the defense sector (area);

- to plan measures for the security of the flanks and boundaries;

- to define in detail the locations of antitank and antipersonnel obstacles;

- to determine the defense area of the second echelon (reserve), the directions of counterattacks, and the lines of deployment (departure positions) in each direction;

- to determine the method of the employment of attached tanks and self-propelled artillery;

- to plan the locations of the vehicles (armored personnel carriers) assigned for the transport of the infantry;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

--to plan primary and alternate locations for command (observation) posts.

The regimental commander defines in detail the regimental antitank areas designated by the division commander, or he himself determines them. In addition, the regimental commander determines the location of the artillery-antitank reserve and the lines of its deployment.

During his reconnaissance, the regimental commander, in accordance with the instructions of the division commander, defines in detail the configuration of the trenches for each position, indicates the switch positions and trenches for each position, determines the number of communication trenches and the configuration of the most important ones. The battalion commander, on the basis of local terrain features, determines in detail the configuration of the trenches and communication trenches in the battalion defense area, and determines where to prepare firing positions for mortars, antitank guns, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and other weapons.

The regimental (battalion) commander conducts his reconnaissance, as a rule, from several points. These points are selected in the defense areas of the small units of the first and second echelons, in the antitank area, in the directions of possible counterattacks, and, in the absence of contact with the enemy, in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone, for the purpose of studying the approaches to the defense sector (area).

390. After making a decision, the regimental (battalion) commander issues his combat order [boevoy prikaz] on the ground, organizes coordination, gives orders for the engineer preparation of the defense sector (area), and for combat, political, material, and technical support, and also indicates measures for the maintenance of the continual combat preparedness of the small units in the defense.

391. The regimental commander, when issuing combat missions, indicates to:

the battalion commanders of the first echelon -- what small units are attached to battalions and what small units support them; the missions, areas of defense, and the battalion antitank centers of resistance within them; where to concentrate their principle efforts; how to organize the system of fire and obstacles in front of the main line of resistance and in the depth of the defense; the number of trenches and communication trenches and their configuration; the sequence and time for accomplishing engineer tasks in priority; the missions for securing the boundaries and flanks; the positions of the combat outpost (if it is designated) and its composition; the method of support of the combat outpost by fire from the main defensive zone, and the method of covering its withdrawal; the method of conducting counterattacks; the method of converting inhabited points to the defense; and the boundary lines between battalions;

the battalion commander of the second echelon -- what small units are attached; his mission, defense area, and the battalion antitank center of resistance within it; the number of trenches and communication trenches and their configuration; the order and time for the completion of engineer tasks; the organization of the system of fire and obstacles in front of the second

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

position and in its depth; the missions for securing the flanks and boundaries; the method of supporting the first echelon by fire; and the directions of counterattacks; the lines of deployment, and the men and materiel designated for the support of counterattacks;

commanders of attached small units of tanks and of self-propelled artillery:

--the method of employment of tanks and self-propelled artillery and their distribution among the battalions; the missions of the tanks and self-propelled artillery which are being employed in ambushes, and also the missions of the self-propelled artillery which is being employed as roving guns;

commander of the regimental artillery group:

--the areas to be covered by long-range fire; the zones for moving barrages in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone; the areas of concentrated fire and the sectors of standing barrages, both in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone as well as in the depth of the regimental defense sector;

--the method of supporting the combat outpost and of covering its withdrawal;

--the method of securing the flanks and boundaries;

--with what means and in what directions to support the counterattacks of the second echelon (reserve);

--the distribution of battalions (batteries) for support of first-echelon battalions;

--the targets and objectives to be neutralized and destroyed during the artillery counterpreparation;

--the areas of primary, temporary, and alternate firing positions;

--the time of readiness for opening fire;

--the signals for requesting, shifting, and ceasing fire.

the regimental artillery commander:

--the missions of the regimental antitank and mortar batteries, and also the missions of the regimental self-propelled artillery battery;

--the missions for the organization of the fire of that artillery which is being employed in antitank areas and in the regimental artillery-antitank reserve;

--the firing position area of the regimental mortar battery and the order of preparation of firing positions.

--the time of readiness for opening fire;

--the signals for requesting, shifting, and ceasing fire;

the commander of the regimental reserve-- the composition of the reserve, missions, defense area, location, possible directions of counterattacks, and

~~SECRET~~

departure positions and routes of movement to them;

the commander of the artillery-antitank reserve -- the composition of the reserve, missions, location, possible directions of operation, deployment lines and routes of march to them, and the signals for summoning the reserve;

the chief of the antitank area -- the composition and missions of the antitank area, its boundaries, and the character and method of its engineer preparation;

the commander of the antiaircraft machine gun (antiaircraft artillery) small unit -- the missions for covering the small units of the regiment from enemy air attacks, and its firing positions;

the regimental engineer:

--the missions for engineer reconnaissance;

--the locations for and density of antitank and antipersonnel obstacles in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone and in the depth of the defense;

--the locations for the construction of the most important defensive installations and heavy shelters, of installations for command and observation posts, and which of them to equip for protection against chemical attack;

--the locations of passages through friendly antitank and antipersonnel obstacles, the method of closing the passages, and also the places for the construction of passages through natural obstacles in the directions of counterattacks;

--the directions of cross-country routes;

--the missions for camouflage;

--where and for what purpose to use attached power equipment;

--the distribution of sapper small units for the technical supervision of engineer works in the battalion defense areas;

--the missions of sapper small units and the distribution of engineer equipment among small units;

--the beginning of engineer works and the sequence and time of their completion by priorities;

the chief of chemical service:

--the missions for chemical reconnaissance;

--what small units to supply with chemical defense equipment and in what quantities;

--where and to what extent to ensure the equipment of shelters for antichemical defense;

~~SECRET~~

--the missions and the method of employment of the regimental chemical small units and attached small units of chemical troops;

--the method of employment of smoke equipment to conceal friendly troops, and also to blind and to exhaust the enemy;

--the time of readiness of measures for antichemical defense.

In addition, the regimental commander, when issuing combat missions, indicates:

--the mission for reconnaissance of the enemy;

--the measures for ensuring the constant combat readiness of small units and their daily combat activity for the destruction of the enemy;

--the method of operations of small units during the enemy artillery and air preparation;

--the missions and the manner of participation of the regimental small units in the artillery counterpreparation, and available information concerning the air counterpreparation;

--the time by which the defense must be occupied and prepared;

--the missions for antitank and antiaircraft defense, and antichemical protection;

--the missions for political support;

--the locations of the vehicles (armored personnel carriers) used to transport infantry personnel;

--the method of the organization of the rear, and of material and technical support;

--the method of evacuation of sick and wounded to the regimental aid station;

--the method of evacuation of sick and wounded horses to the regimental veterinary hospital;

--what friendly troops are operating in front of the combat outpost, their recognition signals, and their method of passing through the combat outpost and the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone;

--the measures for removing civilians from the regimental defense sector;

--the locations (primary and alternate) of command and observation posts;

--the tasks for the organization of communications and the time by which they must be ready.

392. A battalion commander, when assigning combat missions, points out:

to the commanders of the companies of the first echelon -- what small units are attached to the companies and what small units support them; the missions, defense areas, and the company antitank strong points within them; the terrain features or areas of the terrain which must be especially

~~SECRET~~

firmly fortified and stubbornly defended; zones of fire and the system of fire in front of the main line of resistance and in the depth of the defense; positions for guns, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and the positions for machine guns conducting short-range surprise fire; the trace profile, and type of preparation of trenches and communication trenches in company defense areas, places for clearing terrain for better observation and conduct of fire; the order and time limits for the execution of engineer works; sites for the construction of antitank and antipersonnel obstacles, and places for passages through them; missions for the protection of boundaries and flanks; measures for the support of the combat outpost; measures for camouflage;

to the commander of the company of the second echelon (to the commander of the reserve) -- in addition to the above, the zone of fire in front of the third trench and on the flanks and boundaries; the method of supporting the small units of the first echelon by fire; the directions of counterattacks, departure positions, and the method of supporting the counterattacks by fire;

to the commander of the machine-gun company -- what machine-gun small units are attached to the infantry companies; the missions of those machine-gun small units which remain under the direct control of the battalion commander, their zones and system of fire and firing positions (primary and alternate); what machine guns are designated for the delivery of close-range surprise fire, for antiaircraft defense, and for the support of the combat outpost, and their firing positions;

to the commander of the mortar company -- missions; firing positions (primary and alternate) and their preparation; the method of support of the counterattacks of the company of the second echelon (reserve); signals for requesting, shifting, and ceasing fire;

to the commander of the battery of the rifle (motorized rifle) battalion and to the commander of the small unit of attached antitank artillery -- the boundaries of the battalion antitank center of resistance and of the company antitank strong points; the missions of the guns and heavy grenade launchers, and their firing positions; the manner of opening and conducting fire; the method of protecting firing positions by means of antitank obstacles and infantry fire; and the method of preparing and camouflaging firing positions;

to the commander of the antiaircraft machine-gun small unit -- missions for the protection of the battalion from enemy aircraft, and the firing positions of the small unit;

to the commander of a small unit of supporting artillery -- missions for the support of rifle companies of the first echelon, and of the counterattacks of the company of the second echelon (reserve); the manner of securing the boundaries and flanks; the sectors of standing barrages in front of the main line of resistance and in the depth of the battalion defense area;

to the commanders of small units of attached tanks and self-propelled artillery -- the allocation of tanks and self-propelled artillery to companies; missions and firing positions for the tanks and self-propelled artillery in the battalion antitank center of resistance; the method of preparation of firing positions; and the method of opening and conducting fire.

~~SECRET~~

In addition, the battalion commander, when assigning combat missions, points out: missions for the organization of reconnaissance; measures for ensuring constant combat readiness of the small units and the method of repelling the reconnaissance small units of the enemy; the times of occupation and readiness of the defense; the method of operations of small units during the enemy artillery and air preparation; missions for the organization of antitank and antiaircraft defense and antichemical protection; the locations of vehicles (armored personnel carriers); the method of organization of material, technical, and medical support; missions for attached sapper small units, and the allocation of engineer equipment among small units; the locations of observation posts (primary and alternate); and missions for the organization of communications and the time of their readiness.

393. To the commander of the small unit assigned to the combat outpost, the battalion commander points out:

--the composition of the combat outpost and its mission;

--the position of the combat outpost and the engineer preparation of this position;

--the position of the combat outposts of adjacent battalions and their missions;

--what small units of friendly troops are operating in front of the combat outpost, identification signals of these small units, and the manner of their passage through the position of the combat outpost;

--by what means the support of the combat outpost will be accomplished; the signals for requesting, shifting, and ceasing fire;

--the method for protecting by fire the intervals between adjacent small units which are also operating as combat outposts;

--the routes and order of withdrawal;

--signals and the method of maintaining communications.

394. The regimental (battalion) commander organizes a system of artillery, mortar, and antitank fire. The battalion commander, in addition, organizes a system of machine gun and heavy grenade launcher fire.

The regimental (battalion) commander, in organizing a system of fire in the defense, is obliged to provide for:

--the support of the combat outpost;

--the hitting of the enemy while he is moving into concentration areas, and while he is occupying a departure position for the attack;

--the hitting of enemy infantry and tanks in a departure position for the attack;

--the repulse of the enemy infantry and tank attack through the establishment of a zone of continuous fire of all types in front of the main line of resistance;

~~SECRET~~

--the cutting off of enemy infantry from their tanks, and the destruction of the infantry ahead of the main line of resistance;

--the destruction of enemy tanks and infantry which have penetrated into the depth of the defense;

--the support of the counterattack of the second echelon (reserve);

--the protection of the boundaries and flanks, and the organization of fire support with adjacent units;

--the maneuver of weapons, and of tanks and self-propelled artillery.

The battalion commander, in organizing a system of fire, in addition, points out on the ground the firing positions of guns, mortars, tanks, self-propelled artillery, heavy grenade launchers, and heavy machine guns and their sectors of fire, and also gives instructions for the organization of a system of small arms fire in the companies.

395. The weapons of a regiment (battalion) are dispersed laterally and in depth, creating flanking and cross fire ahead of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone, on the flanks, and in the depth of the defense sector (area), with the maximum density in the most important directions. A zone of continuous fire is prepared immediately in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone; every point of the terrain in the zone up to 400 meters in front of main line of resistance must be under effective fire. Zones of continuous fire are also established in the most important sectors in front of the third trench of the first position, and in front of the second and third positions.

Dead spaces in front of the main line of resistance and in the depth of the defense, which are not covered by machine guns and guns emplaced for direct fire, must be swept by artillery and mortar fire from concealed firing positions.

396. The commander of the regimental artillery group, on the basis of the missions assigned to him and also on the basis of data obtained from battalion commanders, conducts a reconnaissance with his subordinate commanders, issues a combat order, details on the ground matters concerning coordination with supporting small units and air, and gives instructions to subordinate commanders concerning the preparation of firing positions for the conduct of direct fire against enemy tanks in the event they reach the area of the group's firing position. The commander of the regimental artillery group personally, and through his staff, checks on the organization of the coordination of the artillery battalions which are detailed for the support of the battalions, and verifies the coordination of the fire of the artillery battalions with that of the rifle battalions being supported.

The staff of the regimental artillery group, on the basis of the missions assigned by the group commander, plans the fire of the group. The fire plan and firing chart, having been worked out, are approved by the commander of the rifle (motorized rifle, mechanized, tank, cavalry) regiment.

~~SECRET~~

397. Tanks and self-propelled artillery are attached by the regimental commander to the battalions which are defending the first position for the reinforcement of their antitank defense. They are employed in company and battalion defense areas for the conduct of stationary fire from previously prepared firing positions, for counterattacks with rifle small units, and also for operations from ambushes. With sufficient reinforcement of the regiment with tanks and self-propelled artillery, some of them, on the authorization of the divisional commander, may be assigned to the antitank areas of the regiment; self-propelled artillery, moreover, can be assigned to the artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment, and may also be employed in the capacity of roving guns.

The battalion commander attaches tanks and self-propelled artillery to companies for the reinforcement of their antitank strong points, or employs them for the reinforcement of the battalion antitank center of resistance, keeping them, while they are thus employed, under his direct control.

398. Engineer preparation of a defense sector (area) is organized with an eye to the continuous combat readiness of the small units of the regiment and battalion for repelling an enemy attack.

Work for the construction and engineer preparation of a defense sector (area) is performed according to priorities established by the regimental commander, depending on the situation and the time, men, and materiel available. Work is performed in approximately the following sequence:

Works of first priority:

--the laying of antitank and antipersonnel mines and concertina-wire obstacles, and also the construction of various obstacles made of barbed wire, obstructions, abatis, and other antitank and antipersonnel obstacles in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone, astride the principal avenues of tank approach in the depth of the defense, and at boundaries;

--the clearing of the terrain in order to improve observation and the conduct of fire;

--the construction of firing positions for guns, tanks, and self-propelled artillery in company antitank strong points and in battalion antitank centers of resistance;

--the digging and camouflaging, in battalion areas, of a continuous first trench and of sectors of the second and third trenches in the areas of the small units, with a depth permitting firing while standing on the bottom of the trench;

--the digging of communication trenches;

--the organization of positions for infantry weapons and of shelters for personnel both inside and outside the trenches;

--the digging, by mechanical means, of trenches and communication

~~SECRET~~



trenches in the second position outside the battalion defense area, and their concealment;

--the adaption to the defense of inhabited localities and separate buildings;

--the construction, organization, and camouflage of antitank areas, and of artillery, mortar, tank, and self-propelled artillery firing positions throughout the depth of the defense sector of the regiment;

--the organization and camouflage of cover for transport and horses;

--the digging, organization, and camouflage of installations for command and observation posts;

--the preparation of water sources and the construction of water supply points.

Works of second priority:

--an increase in the density of laying mines and the reinforcement of other obstacles in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone;

--the development of a system of obstacles in the regimental defense sector through laying mines and the construction of other types of obstacles in supplementary directions in the depth of the defense;

--the connecting of sectors of trenches into continuous trenches, the deepening of trenches and communication trenches, and their improvement in the combat, housekeeping, and sanitary senses;

--the preparation and organization of deployment lines (departure positions) for the second echelon (reserve) and the artillery-antitank reserve, and the preparation of routes of movement to them;

--the construction, organization, and camouflage of alternate firing positions for artillery, mortars, tanks, and self-propelled artillery, and also of installations for alternate command and observation posts;

--the building of heavy shelters and dummy installations.

Works of third priority:

--the construction, organization, and camouflage of switch positions in the regimental defense sector;

--the increase of the strength, the improvement of the organization, and the camouflage of defensive installations;

--the increase in the number of heavy shelters and dummy installations, and also the digging of dummy trenches;

--the reinforcement and supplemental construction of antitank and anti-personnel obstacles.

~~SECRET~~

399. Work on the construction and engineer organization of a regimental defense sector is performed according to a plan which is developed by the regimental engineer jointly with the staff, and which is approved by the regimental commander. Work is carried out with wide use of mechanized means and with maximum effort, with the small units remaining in full combat readiness.

During the transition to the defense under conditions of direct contact with the enemy and under conditions of a hasty assumption of the defense, antitank and antipersonnel obstacles are constructed in first priority in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone in the most important directions. During the organization of positions, the small units first dig individual foxholes; later they are connected to form continuous trenches. The greater part of the sapper small units are employed at this time for establishing antitank and antipersonnel mined-explosive obstacles in front of the main line of resistance.

400. Antitank defense constitutes a basis of the defense; therefore, its organization is one of the most important duties of all commanders.

The bases of antitank defense are:

--antitank fire, primarily of artillery, self-propelled artillery, and tanks, in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone and in the depth of the defense;

--antitank obstacles and natural barriers tied in with the system of antitank fire;

--artillery fire and air attacks against enemy tanks at the approaches to the defense;

--reconnaissance of all types and a warning system;

--the prepared and timely executed maneuver of the artillery-antitank reserve.

401. Antitank defense is organized throughout the entire depth of the defense of a regiment (battalion) and, in first priority, in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone. The greater part of the antitank weapons of a regiment are employed for combat for the first position.

The system of antitank defense of a regiment includes:

--company antitank strong points, organized into battalion antitank centers of resistance;

--antitank areas, created astride probable directions of tank approach;

--artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery disposed in the probable directions of tank approach;

--antitank obstacles which cover the probable directions of tank approach, antitank areas, artillery firing positions, and tanks and self-propelled artillery;

~~SECRET~~

--an artillery-antitank reserve;

402. In each company defense area, the company commander organizes a company antitank strong point.

The company antitank strong point is intended for combat against enemy tanks and self-propelled artillery and is the basis of the company defense area. It is organized for all-around antitank defense on the most important sector of the terrain, on the retention of which the stability of the company defense area depends. For the organization of a company antitank strong point, attached antitank guns, tanks, self-propelled artillery, heavy grenade launchers, and flamethrowers, plus the small units of the company dispersed in this sector, are employed. The weapons included in the company antitank strong point are integrated into the general system of antitank fire and antitank obstacles.

The boundaries of the company antitank strong point, as a rule, coincide with the boundaries of the company defense area during the defense of an important avenue of tank approach and when there is a sufficient quantity of attached antitank weapons.

403. The battalion antitank center of resistance consists of the company antitank strong points, and of the antitank weapons which are under the direct control of the battalion commander, all integrated into the general system of antitank fire and antitank obstacles.

A battalion antitank center of resistance is organized by the battalion commander.

All the weapons of the battalion antitank center of resistance are subordinate to the battalion commander.

The control of the antitank weapons located in the company antitank strong points is exercised by the battalion commander through the commanders of the rifle companies. He personally commands the antitank weapons under his direct control, for which he establishes communications and signals with them.

404. A system of antitank fire in the defense consists in the organized employment of artillery, self-propelled artillery, and tank fire and the fire of infantry antitank weapons for the destruction of enemy tanks in front of the main line of resistance and in the depth of the defense, in conformity with the decision of the regimental (battalion) commander.

A system of fire is organized on the basis of the close coordination of antitank fire of all types, and taking into consideration antitank obstacles.

In the organization of a system of antitank fire, the battalion commander anticipates:

--the employment of the greater part of the antitank weapons for repelling an enemy tank attack in front of the main line of resistance;

--the organization of flanking and cross fire and its coordination with the system of antitank obstacles;

~~SECRET~~

--the concentration of antitank fire in a threatened direction or sector;

--the mutual fire support between company antitank strong points and with adjacent strong points;

--the support of an all-around defense by fire;

--the destruction by fire of enemy tanks which have broken through into the depth of the battalion defense area and on its flanks;

--the maneuver of antitank weapons laterally and from depth.

405. The regimental (battalion) commander, in organizing an antitank defense, is required:

--to indicate likely directions of tank approach;

--to organize observation for enemy tanks and to establish warning signals for indicating the appearance of enemy tanks;

--to attach antitank weapons to small units to reinforce battalion antitank centers of resistance (company antitank strong points);

--to indicate the firing positions and sectors of fire of antitank weapons, and also the locations of tank ambushes;

--to indicate the locations of antitank obstacles and the manner of covering them with fire;

--to indicate the method of employing flamethrower-incendiary equipment;

--to indicate the time of readiness of the antitank defense.

The regimental commander, moreover, issues instructions concerning the preparation of the fire of the regimental artillery group on probable areas of disposition of enemy tanks, gives in detail the zones of moving barrages, organizes antitank areas, and forms, and assigns missions to, the artillery-antitank reserve.

Company antitank strong points, battalion antitank centers of resistance, and antitank areas must be united by a general system of fire, and must be tied in with antitank obstacles and with the operations of the artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment.

The regimental (battalion) commander locates antitank weapons in such manner that all the terrain suitable for tank operations in front of the main line of resistance and in the depth of the defense is covered by the flanking and cross fire of antitank weapons, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and infantry antitank weapons.

Artillery, tank, and self-propelled artillery small units attached to battalions, and also assigned to antitank areas, occupy platoon (battery) firing positions in the battalion antitank centers of resistance and in antitank areas; in this respect, the guns, tanks, and self-propelled

~~SECRET~~

artillery are distributed laterally and in depth, depending on the missions and on the nature of the terrain; distributing them in a line is not permitted.

The distribution of antitank weapons must ensure: mutual fire support laterally and from depth; the possibility of the maneuver of fire and of the conduct of directed antitank fires; and minimum vulnerability to enemy fire.

Antitank obstacles are so arranged that they delay the attack of enemy tanks, disrupt their combat formations, hamper their maneuver, and in this manner ensure favorable conditions for antitank weapons to destroy the enemy tank small units piecemeal.

406. Antitank areas within the limits of the regimental defense sector are organized by the regimental commander. In the regiment, depending upon the situation and the availability of weapons, one or two antitank areas are formed.

Antitank areas are formed from antitank and gun artillery. They are reinforced with self-propelled artillery, tanks, flamethrowers, small units, and sapper small units with means for constructing antitank obstacles.

Antitank areas embrace likely avenues of tank approach. They are usually organized between the first and second positions, or on the second position. Intervals between antitank areas are covered by antitank obstacles, which must be covered by the effective fire of antitank guns, mortars, and machine guns.

For the unification of control and the organization of the system of antitank fire, in each antitank area a chief of the antitank area is assigned from among the senior commanders of the artillery small units assigned to the antitank area. The chief of the antitank area is subordinate to the regimental commander, and fulfills the directives of the regimental chief of artillery relative to the organization of fire.

No one under the chief of the antitank area has the right to abandon the positions occupied without an order from the chief of the antitank area.

407. The artillery-antitank reserve occupies firing positions prepared for all-around defense, usually within the limits of the second position on the most likely avenue of tank approach, and is in constant readiness to move out to designated deployment lines, or to repulse enemy tank attacks from occupied firing positions.

The commander of the artillery-antitank reserve must organize continuous observation for enemy tanks and coordination with the small units occupying the second position; also select places for laying antitank mines in the event of a breakthrough of enemy tanks toward the area of deployment of the artillery-antitank reserve.

In order to organize an antitank defense on the directions of likely operations of the reserve, the artillery-antitank reserve commander must conduct timely reconnaissance of deployment lines and routes of approach to them; he must prepare firing positions on the deployment lines to provide

~~SECRET~~

all-around defense, organize coordination with the small units operating in these directions, and select locations for laying antitank mines.

408. The regimental (battalion) commander, in organizing antiaircraft defense, plans:

- which small units it is necessary to cover most densely against attack by enemy aircraft;

- the missions of antiaircraft small units and the areas of their firing positions;

- the method of employing infantry weapons, tanks, and self-propelled artillery against low-flying enemy aircraft;

- the method of organizing the coordination of antiaircraft small units within the regiment (battalion) and with adjacent units;

- the organization of air observation, warning, and communications;

- the recognition signals for friendly aircraft.

During the battle, in the absence of active operations by enemy aircraft, antiaircraft small units of the regiment (battalion) may be utilized to destroy enemy personnel, weapons, armored personnel carriers, and light tanks.

409. The regimental (battalion) commander, in organizing antichemical defense, plans:

- the conduct of uninterrupted chemical reconnaissance and of continuous chemical observation of the enemy and the locations of his small units;

- the organization of the warning of small units, especially those located in shelters, of an enemy chemical attack;

- the carrying out of measures for disrupting or weakening an enemy chemical attack;

- the equipping of shelters for chemical defense;

- the measures for defense against enemy flamethrower-incendiary equipment;

- the decontamination of armament, equipment, transport, horses, and defensive installations, and methods of clearing passages on contaminated terrain;

- the creation of reserves of individual chemical warfare defense equipment and of means of decontamination.

The regimental chemical small unit is employed to conduct chemical reconnaissance, chemical observation, and warning.

Flamethrower small units attached to the regiment are employed, as a rule, to reinforce battalion antitank centers of resistance, company antitank strong points, and regimental antitank areas.

~~SECRET~~

410. Coordination in the regiment and battalion is organized on the terrain according to missions and directions for counterattacks. The missions according to which coordination in the defense is organized are:

--the holding of the combat outpost positions (forward position) and the prevention of an enemy approach to the main line of resistance, of the main defensive zone;

--the destruction of the attacking enemy in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone;

--the destruction of the enemy who has wedged into the defense, by all types of fire, by counterattacks of the second echelons and reserves, and also by air strikes.

Two or three of the most important directions are prepared for counterattacks; on each of them there is organized the coordination of the small units of the second echelons and reserves with the small units of the first echelons, and with the artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and aircraft.

In organizing coordination, the regimental (battalion) commander must achieve coordinated operations of the small units of the regiment (battalion), and also of the attached and supporting small units, in the destruction of the attacking enemy.

411. The regimental (battalion) commander, in organizing coordination, is required:

--to define in detail the combat mission of the regiment (battalion);

--to indicate the method of coordination with adjacent units;

--to define in detail the combat missions for battalions (companies) and to coordinate their operations with one another; in this respect he must especially carefully plan the method of their coordination at the boundaries and flanks;

--to indicate the method of mutual support by fire and by the counterattacks of the battalions (companies) of the first echelon and the method of their coordination with the tanks, self-propelled artillery, artillery, and sapper small units;

--to establish the method of support of the battalions (companies) of the first echelon by the fire of the regimental artillery group and of the mortars of the regiment; to establish the method of support of the counterattacks of the second echelon (reserve) of the regiment (battalion); and also to indicate the method of calling for artillery and mortar fire;

--to detail the directions of counterattacks of the second echelon (reserve) of the regiment (battalion) and the lines of deployment (departure positions); to indicate the method of coordination in conducting counterattacks together with the battalions (companies) of the first echelon and with the small units assigned to support the counterattacks;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

--to define in detail the lines of deployment of the artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment and the routes for moving to them;

--to indicate the signals for summoning the artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment, and also the method of its coordination with the second echelon (reserve) in destroying enemy tanks which have broken through into the depth of the defense of the regiment;

--to determine in detail avenues of possible tank approach, and to indicate the method of coordination of the battalion antitank centers of resistance (company antitank strong points), regimental antitank areas, the artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment, and the regimental artillery group in repulsing enemy tank attacks;

--to indicate the method of coordination of the small units assigned to protect the boundaries and flanks, and to support the combat outpost and cover its withdrawal;

--to establish the method of employing smoke and flamethrower-incendiary equipment attached to the regiment (battalion) in repulsing enemy attacks, during counterattacks, and during combat in the depth of the defense;

--to announce the missions which are to be accomplished by aviation and by the division (regimental) artillery group during the course of battle to the front of the regimental (battalion) defense and on its flanks;

--to establish the method of maintaining communications during the course of battle for the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone, and during the combat in the depth of the defense;

--to announce signals for requesting, shifting, and ceasing artillery fire; signals warning of the appearance of enemy tanks, aircraft, and of a chemical attack; signals for mutual recognition, target designation, and for communications between aviation and infantry; signals for identifying the main line of resistance; and also other signals.

412. In the defense, reconnaissance is conducted continuously. Reconnaissance must locate the main forces of the enemy while they are still on the march, and establish the direction of their movement and their concentration areas.

Under conditions of direct contact with the enemy, reconnaissance has the object of promptly finding out the regrouping of the enemy, and of excluding the possibility of his suddenly launching an attack; of determining the composition and strength of enemy forces, his concentration areas, and the direction of his main attack. In order further to detail information on the enemy and his intentions, the capture of prisoners is systematically organized on the entire sector of the regimental defense. Reconnaissance is carried out according to a plan which is approved by the regimental commander.

The operations of small units (reconnaissance groups) assigned to reconnaissance should not follow a fixed pattern. It is necessary to conduct raids to organize ambushes at different times of the day and night, and

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



in those places where the enemy least of all expects them.

In the regiment (battalion), observation of enemy operations is conducted continuously; at night, listening posts are established as well. Observation points and posts are organized in advance by the regimental (battalion) staff throughout the entire depth of the regimental (battalion) defense.

Reconnaissance in force in the defense is carried out on the order of the division commander and is accomplished by reinforced reconnaissance detachments.

413. The command post of the regimental commander in the defense is usually organized in an area inaccessible to tanks, in the antitank area, or in the antitank center of resistance of the battalion of the second echelon; the observation post is usually organized in one of the battalion antitank centers of resistance which is located on the first position.

The observation post of the battalion commander, as a rule, is organized in one of the company antitank strong points.

As soon as the first information is received concerning enemy preparations for the attack, the regimental commander must be at his observation post.

414. Communications in the defense are organized along the axis of the primary and alternate command and observation posts. All cable lines of communication must be buried in the ground or laid in trenches and communication trenches. Communication centers and stations are disposed in shelters.

Wire communications, mobile means of communication, signalling, and liaison officers are widely employed for the control of small units.

Prior to the beginning of the enemy attack, radio is used for communications with small units whose wire communications have been destroyed, and for communications with small units conducting reconnaissance and employed as security. As soon as the enemy attacks, radio is used without limitations.

415. Vehicles (armored personnel carriers) of first-echelon regiments, designated for carrying infantry personnel, are pooled on regimental level and are dispersed in areas concealed from enemy air and ground observation, usually behind the main defensive zone. The vehicles (armored personnel carriers) of regiments defending on a wide front and those of second echelon regiments may be pooled at battalion level under the command of a platoon leader of the auto transport company.

The vehicles (armored personnel carriers) of the mortar and machine-gun companies are located in the depth of the battalion defenses, according to the instructions of the battalion commanders.

Artillery (mortar) prime movers are placed under cover close to the firing positions.

Communication with the vehicles (armored personnel carriers) is carried on by radio, mobile means of communication, and visual signals.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

Carefully camouflaged shelters are prepared for transport, supplies, and personnel. During a long period on the defense, small rear service units are periodically moved in the interests of concealment.

Ammunition reserves may be built up on the ground at artillery, tank, and self-propelled artillery firing positions. Dugouts are constructed to protect the ammunition.

The bringing up of necessary supplies and rations to small units is generally done at night.

416. When in direct contact with the enemy, the regimental (battalion) commander must organize the continual destruction of enemy personnel and materiel by fire of all types, and must prevent the enemy from conducting reconnaissance and from carrying out engineer works. For this purpose, the regimental (battalion) commander plans:

- continual fire upon the enemy by specially designated weapons;
- the extensive use of snipers, expert riflemen, and machine gunners for destroying enemy groups, individual soldiers, and officers;
- the disruption of the enemy's normal activities in his disposition by directing concentrated artillery and mortar fire, particularly at night, against enemy supply points, communication centers, headquarters, and places of concentration;
- the organization of constant and active reconnaissance for the purpose of studying the enemy disposition, and of disclosing his regroupings, and his preparations for an attack.

At the same time, the regimental (battalion) commander must constantly perfect the system of his defense and conceal from the enemy the actual location of his small units, the nature of his defense, and the organization of his control.

417. In order to ensure the constant combat readiness of the small units for repulsing an enemy attack and conducting daily combat activities for the destruction of the enemy, the regimental (battalion) commander gives instructions for:

- the manner of conducting reconnaissance, especially observation and interception, by day and by night;
- the manner of conducting duty tours in small units, and particularly at observation posts;
- the rate of fire of all weapons;
- the method of opening fire for the destruction of disclosed enemy groups, individual soldiers, officers, and weapons;
- the method of lighting up the terrain at night, and measures for camouflage.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

--the method of carrying out engineer work, taking into account tours of duty and rest for the personnel;

--the manner of passing reconnaissance and sapper small units beyond the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone, and of their return;

--the manner of receiving defectors;

--the manner of permitting persons to proceed to small units from higher headquarters and from adjacent units;

--the quantity of ammunition with every type of weapon and the stocks of this ammunition in the small units;

--the routes and method of movement in the regimental sector;

--the time and the manner of transition from the daytime regiment battle activities to nighttime activities and vice versa;

--the time and manner of receiving food;

--the system for medical servicing of personnel;

--the time and the method of conducting training with soldiers, non-commissioned officers, and officers;

--the time and method of the technical servicing of combat equipment and arms.

The regimental (battalion) commander determines the time for the transition from nighttime activities to daytime activities and vice versa.

418. First echelon battalions designate no less than one-third of the small unit personnel for repelling sudden enemy attacks and enemy reconnaissance small units during the daytime, and up to two-thirds of their personnel at night. A constant watch is maintained at each gun, mortar, tank, and self-propelled artillery piece. Resting personnel are located in shelters near the trenches and weapons in readiness to take their place in case of an alarm.

Observers are stationed near the shelters for awaking the resting personnel when the alarm signal is given.

The regimental (battalion) commander is responsible for constantly checking the readiness for combat of the battalions (companies) and the material welfare of the personnel. The regimental (battalion) commander, when visiting a small unit, checks: the knowledge of the situation and the tasks; the system of fire; the readiness of weapons to open fire immediately; the condition and maintenance of arms, and equipment; the availability of ammunition and the means of protecting it; the condition of the defense installations and of obstacles; the state of camouflage; the organization and the vigilance of observation; the state and work of the means of communications; the security of the boundaries and flanks; the knowledge of established signals.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

All shortcomings disclosed during the check are immediately taken care of.

### 3. THE CONDUCT OF DEFENSIVE COMBAT

419. Until the approach of the enemy to the combat outpost positions, reconnaissance in the regiment is carried on by separate reconnaissance patrols (separate mounted patrols) or by reconnaissance detachments, with the task of determining the strength, composition, direction of movement, and concentration areas of the main body of the enemy.

With the approach of the enemy to the combat outpost positions, small reconnaissance units reconnoiter with the aim of further detailing the composition, the numbering, and the combat formation of the enemy, and the direction of his main blow. Observation from the main line of resistance is intensified.

In the course of battle, the efforts of reconnaissance are concentrated at the boundaries and flanks, with the task of quickly ascertaining the attempts of enemy units and small units to gain in the flanks and the rear of the defending regiment (battalion), and of determining their strength and composition, paying particular attention to tank units and small units.

The regimental commander, after having learned of the enemy's approach, uses the fire of artillery and mortars, firing from reserve firing positions, and aircraft to hit the enemy with the aim of routing him.

The combat outpost conducts combat at its position with the aim of not allowing the forward units of the enemy and his reconnaissance small units to approach the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone. The artillery and mortars which are designated for supporting the combat outpost, by concentrated fire, annihilate enemy personnel and weapons, and do not allow the outflanking and envelopment of the combat outpost; fire is conducted from temporary firing positions.

The combat outpost withdraws from the positions occupied only on the order of the regimental commander. Its withdrawal is covered by fire from designated artillery and from infantry weapons from the main defensive zone.

420. On the basis of personal observation and the careful study of reconnaissance data, the regimental (battalion) commander must make a timely determination of the enemy's preparation for attack, the changes in his combat formations, and the nature of the attack being prepared. Intelligence on enemy preparations for an attack must immediately be turned over to the division (regimental) commander.

Infantry weapons and specially designated artillery repel enemy attempts to reconnoiter in force the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone.

The regimental (battalion) commander must not allow the enemy to discover prematurely the system of fire of the defense, particularly the anti-tank system of fire.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

The observation of enemy activities during his preparations for an attack must be particularly vigilant.

After the reconnaissance small units and forward units (small units) of the enemy have been repelled, weapons which have disclosed themselves must change firing positions. Passages pierced by the enemy through the obstacles in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone are immediately closed by antitank and antipersonnel obstacles and are covered by artillery, mortar, and infantry fire.

421. During the enemy artillery preparation and air preparation, the regimental commander and the battalion commander personally observe their effects and also observe the disposition of their own small units. Personnel of small units which are subject to the enemy artillery and air preparations take cover, on the orders of their commanders, in the trenches they occupy, ready to occupy immediately their positions for repelling enemy attacks. Observers and crews of alert weapons remain at their posts. The regimental artillery group and the regimental (battalion) mortars concentrate their fire against the enemy tanks and infantry which are ready to attack.

With the beginning of the enemy attack, the defensive fire is brought to the highest pitch. A massed enemy tank attack is repelled by the fire of all the artillery which is located in the attacked and adjacent sectors, by the fire of tanks, self-propelled artillery, and other antitank weapons, and also by air strikes.

The artillery and mortars lay a barrage on the important sectors in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone. The right to call for a standing barrage from the artillery is given to all commanders from the company (battery) up, and for a rolling barrage, from the battalion (artillery battalion) commander up. Antitank guns, tanks, and self-propelled artillery usually open fire at attacking enemy tanks at a distance which permits inflicting an effective blow. It must be taken into account that the premature opening of fire by antitank guns will lead to their disclosure and to their neutralization by enemy artillery fire. The infantry, with all its weapons, destroys enemy tanks and at the same time cuts off enemy infantry from his tanks and destroys it with fire.

Individual enemy tanks which have broken through are destroyed by the antitank weapons of the second echelons (reserves), and by the fire of the antitank guns, tanks, and self-propelled artillery from the depth of the defense.

The regimental (battalion) commander is responsible, with the concentrated fire of all weapons, for suddenly crushing individual, most threatening portions of the enemy combat formation, inflicting losses on him, and for stopping him, after which he shifts the artillery fire to other sectors, continuing to destroy the enemy with the fire of the rifle small units.

The quick maneuver of fire and weapons, especially in the depth of the regimental defense, has a decisive significance and insures a destructive blow at the enemy, especially against his tanks, self-propelled artillery, and armored personnel carriers.

~~SECRET~~

422. In case the enemy wedges into the first position of the main defensive zone, the small units remaining in the rear of the enemy hold the positions they occupy and continue to conduct battle. The regimental (battalion) commander must stop the spread of the enemy laterally and in depth with the concentrated fire of artillery and mortars, with the fire of guns emplaced for direct fire, with fire from tanks, self-propelled artillery, and all infantry weapons, and with barrages. He must strengthen his flanks at sectors, where the enemy has wedged in, neutralize the enemy with fire, and then by a counterattack of the second echelon (reserve), supported by all types of fire, destroy the wedged-in enemy and restore the situation.

The regimental commander moves the artillery-antitank reserve in the most threatened direction, with the aim of holding up the further advance of the enemy tanks into the depth of the defense.

On the breakthrough of enemy tanks into the area of the firing positions of a regimental artillery group, the artillery remaining in the occupied position destroys enemy tanks with direct fire. The commander of the regimental artillery group takes all measures for holding the area of the firing positions of the group.

423. The regimental (battalion) commander personally organizes the counterattack of the second echelon (reserve). He is responsible for defining precisely on the terrain the tasks of the second echelon (reserve); for indicating to it the line of deployment (departure position), the direction, and the time for beginning the counterattack; and the manner of its artillery support. The regimental (battalion) commander brings up tanks, self-propelled artillery, and some of the small units of the first echelon, which are located in the direction of the counterattacks of the second echelon (reserve), to take part in the counterattack. The commander informs his immediate superior of the decision taken.

Before the counterattack it is necessary, by fire of all types, to cause enemy losses and to break up his combat formations. The counterattack is preceded by the concentrated fire of artillery and mortars, and also by the fire of tanks and self-propelled artillery from earlier prepared firing positions on the lines of deployment. Adjacent battalions (companies) support the counterattack with fire, while designated small units of the first echelon pass to the counterattack simultaneously with the second echelon (reserve), to destroy the enemy who has wedged in.

The greatest success is made by a sudden counterattack directed against the enemy's flank and rear. A counterattack is carried out at the moment when the enemy has not yet brought up his weapons or consolidated the line or position he has captured.

Having destroyed the enemy who has wedged into the defense, and having restored the situation, the regimental (battalion) commander takes measures for the immediate restoration of the disrupted system of fire, the repair of damage in the trenches and obstacles, and the resupply of ammunition, and readies the small units to repel repeated enemy attacks.

~~SECRET~~

Expended echelons and reserves must be reconstituted.

424. In the event the enemy wedges into the defense along the boundary with an adjacent unit, the regimental (battalion) commander must: by concentrated artillery and mortar fire, in coordination with tank and self-propelled artillery fire, inflict losses on the enemy infantry and tanks which have wedged into the defense; with part of his forces, occupy the switch position or the communication trenches at the boundary with the adjacent unit, so as to prevent the enemy from spreading out to the flank and into the depth; in coordination with the adjacent unit, destroy the enemy with a counterattack.

425. In the event of an enemy breakthrough of the first position of the main defensive zone along the entire regimental sector, and if it is impossible for the regimental commander to restore the situation with his own forces, he takes all measures to hold the second position and the switch positions and to prevent the enemy infantry and tanks from spreading out further into the depth of the defense. At the same time, the regimental commander organizes supporting fire for the small units still fighting at the first position. A counterattack by the battalion of the second echelon (reserve) of the regiment is usually carried out simultaneously and in coordination with the second echelon (reserve) of the division.

#### 4. DEFENSE OF THE REGIMENT (BATTALION) OF THE SECOND ECHELON

426. In defending in the second echelon of the division, the regiment, depending on the mission received, may occupy in advance a defense sector of the third position in the most important direction, or may be deployed at the third position in constant readiness to conduct counterattacks.

As a rule, the battalion of the second echelon of the regiment occupies a defense area at the second position in the most important direction. Its mission is to repel an enemy attack in front of the second position and to be prepared to move quickly in the threatened direction to counter-attack the enemy who has wedged into the defense.

427. In organizing the defense, in addition to the usual measures taken, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- organize reconnaissance and security on the boundaries and flanks of the defense sector (area);

- carefully study the terrain in the directions of counterattacks, study the deployment lines and routes leading to them, and also organize their engineer preparation;

- detail on the ground the trace of the switch positions and the manner of their organization;

- determine the method of coordination and communication with the regiments (battalions) of the first echelon, the artillery and artillery-antitank reserve, of the division (regiment) and the tanks and self-propelled artillery assigned to the second echelon;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

--organize the survey of the distances to the barrage fire lines within the division defensive zone (regimental defense sector).

428. In preparing counterattacks, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

--assign combat missions to each small unit, and define the deployment lines in each counterattack direction;

--determine the method of moving the small units to the deployment lines and the routes leading to them;

--announce the signals for moving to the deployment lines and the signal for starting the counterattacks;

--determine the sectors on which artillery and mortar fire for the support of the small units must be prepared;

--point out the locations of obstacles and passages through them;

--organize coordination and communications, and also prepare observation posts in each counterattack direction;

--conduct, on the ground, exercises for the organization and conduct of counterattacks.

429. Having received the order (signal) for a counterattack, the commander of the regiment (battalion) of the second echelon quickly explains in detail the missions of the small units and the method of coordination. Then, under the cover of artillery and mortar fire, he moves the regiment (battalion) in the indicated direction to a previously prepared deployment line.

The accompanying artillery and the mortars occupy firing positions and protect the deployment of the regiment (battalion) into a combat formation; they then support and accompany the counterattack with their fire and maneuver.

The tank small units detailed to support the counterattack of the regiment (battalion) of the second echelon, operate as infantry close support tanks.

430. The counterattack of the second echelon is conducted swiftly and, as a rule, against the flank and rear of the enemy who has wedged into the defense. The counterattack is conducted in coordination with the regiments (battalions) of the first echelon and with the support of the artillery.

With fire of all types, the regiment (battalion) sweeps the enemy who has wedged into the defense. On a signal (at a set time) established by the division (regimental) commander, the regiment, with the fire support of the division (regimental) artillery group, vigorously counterattacks together with the tanks, and self-propelled artillery, destroys the enemy, and restores the situation.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



After the previous defensive situation has been restored, the regiment (battalion) of the second echelon is moved to its own area or takes up the defense in the first echelon of the division (regiment).

431. If the regimental (battalion) commander has received an order to hold a defense sector (area) prepared on the third (second) position, the regiment (battalion), with fire of all types, inflicts a decisive defeat on the enemy who has wedged into the defense, so as to stop his further forward movement.

432. The regimental (battalion) commander must always know the situation on the division (regimental) front of defense, and keep informed of any change. With the beginning of the battle, he is at his observation post in constant communication with the division (regimental) commander, with the commanders of the regiments (battalions) of the first echelon, and with the commanders of the division (regimental) artillery group, the division (regimental) artillery-antitank reserve, and the division tank reserve.

##### 5. DEFENSE AT NIGHT

433. To conduct defensive combat at night, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- hold the major part of the small units deployed at the first position of the main defensive zone in complete combat readiness;

- move a part of the infantry weapons, and some of the weapons assigned for direct fire, to temporary firing positions closer to the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone, prepared to open fire on the attacking enemy;

- before nightfall, organize reconnaissance and the staking-out of directions for counterattacks;

- before nightfall, make a check on the readiness for night actions of the artillery and other weapons, night firing instruments, and the reserves, and check on the availability of devices for conducting fire at night;

- move to temporary or alternate firing positions those weapons which were firing against the enemy by day;

- strengthen reconnaissance;

- strengthen combat security, observation of the enemy, and interception, and also observation of friendly obstacles in front of the main line of resistance;

- dispatch local security (listening posts, patrols, observers), regardless of whether or not there is combat security;

- establish a system for periodically illuminating the terrain in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone;

- check on the availability of tracer shells (bullets);

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

--inform the small units of the identification markings of firendly troops;

--provide for night concealment measures;

--reinforce the security of the flanks and boundaries.

Tanks and self-propelled artillery are employed for the reinforcement of antitank fire, and for counterattacks jointly with the infantry along previously marked directions. The firing positions of the tanks and the self-propelled artillery are covered by the disposition of the infantry.

The artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment generally occupies previously prepared firing positions in the most probable direction of enemy tank attack.

The small units, which have moved at night to temporary (alternate) positions, before daylight, under cover, and, as a rule, at varied times return to their daytime positions.

434. In the event of an enemy attack, the artillery, on request of the company and battalion commanders, fires a standing barrage along previously prepared sectors. Infantry weapons suddenly open fire against the attacking enemy.

The enemy who has broken into the main line of resistance is fired at point-blank and is destroyed by a counterattack.

Illumination of the terrain is increased. Artillery and aircraft are called on to start fires and to illuminate the terrain held by the enemy.

435. In the event of an enemy breakthrough into the depth of the first position, he must be immediately counterattacked by the second echelon (reserve). The counterattack must be begun before the enemy succeeds in consolidating and bringing up reserves and weapons, and is conducted until the restoration of the situation on the main line of resistance. The counterattack must be simple in concept and execution.

By laying down a barrage in front of the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone, the regimental (battalion) commander prevents the enemy reserves from moving up. The battalions (companies) of the first echelon prevent the enemy who has wedged into the defense from spreading out laterally and in depth.

If the counterattack is unsuccessful, the second echelon (reserve) consolidates on the line reached. At daybreak, after a thorough preparation, the counterattack is repeated.

436. During the transition to the defense at night on unfamiliar terrain, it is necessary to organize reconnaissance and combat security and to take measures to move small units to their assigned defense areas. On moving into these areas, the small units organize a defense and dig in.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

The main line of resistance is selected as much as possible along terrain features easily found in the darkness. A more compact combat formation is organized initially before daybreak. The greater portion of the guns, tanks, and self-propelled artillery is attached to the battalions (companies), and is moved to the main line of resistance for direct fire. The artillery remaining under the direct control of the regimental (battalion) commander prepares initial positions based on a map. Sapper small units lay mines on the most important directions, along roads, and at exits from inhabited points; before daybreak the obstacles are guarded by posts sent out from the sapper small units.

The regimental (battalion) commander, personally and through his staff officers, must, during the night, see to it that the small units occupy their areas correctly, and at daybreak, if necessary, must reorganize the combat formation in accordance with the situation and his decision, organize anew coordination and the system of fire, define in detail the configuration of the positions (trenches), and organize the installation of additional obstacles.

#### 6. PECULIARITIES OF DEFENSE ON A WIDE FRONT

437. Defense on a wide front is employed in secondary directions, usually on terrain which is not everywhere suitable for troop operations. It is also used when there are insufficient men and materiel on hand, and during a withdrawal.

The organization of the defense on a wide front depends on the mission, the width of the defense front, the character of the terrain, and the degree of enemy activity.

Defense on a wide front is usually based on holding separate areas of the terrain, which are favorable in the tactical sense and which straddle the most important directions, in combination with counterattacks from the depth of the defense.

438. In a defense on a wide front, the rifle (motorized rifle, mechanized) regiment may defend a sector with a width of 8 to 10 kilometers (a tank regiment, 6 to 8 kilometers), creating on the most important directions battalion defense areas. The boundaries of the battalion defense areas do not have to be contiguous. The rifle (motorized rifle, tank) battalion, with attached small units, occupies in this case a continuous defense area, as a rule, on a normal front.

On terrain difficult for attack, the battalion may defend an area with a frontage of up to 5 kilometers (a tank battalion, 3 to 4 kilometers); in this case, the defense is organized as individual company areas.

Battalion and individual company defense areas, as a rule, have mutual fire support. In the intervals between them, trenches are dug, dummy installations and obstacles are erected, and tank ambushes may be set up. The intervals between defense areas are occupied by minor small units armed with heavy machine guns and guns. The defense areas, and the positions of the small units defending in the intervals between them, are prepared for perimeter defense.

~~SECRET~~

439. The regimental (battalion) combat formation is usually organized in one echelon, and a reserve is designated. Included in the regimental (battalion) reserve are rifle small units, reinforced by artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper small units. The reserve organizes an area in the depth of the defense on the most threatened direction and prepares counterattacks. In addition, an artillery-antitank reserve is formed in the regiment.

440. To ensure greater stability and independence of the battalions, the regimental commander attaches to them some of the artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and also sapper and chemical warfare small units.

Attached to the battalions defending directions accessible to tanks are small units of antitank and self-propelled artillery, and flamethrower small units. Companies are reinforced by antitank guns, mortars, heavy grenade launchers, and machine guns.

The regimental artillery group, and the artillery attached to the battalions should be ready for wide maneuver. Supplementary firing positions and a system of observation posts which guarantee observation of the entire defense sector (area) are prepared for this purpose. Also, routes of maneuver are reconnoitered and prepared beforehand.

441. Antitank areas are set up along the main directions accessible to tanks.

The regimental artillery-antitank reserve is stationed at crossroads which assure movement in any direction which is accessible to tanks. In the directions which are accessible to tanks and in the intervals between defensive areas, deployment lines for the artillery-antitank reserve are prepared. Firing positions for the conduct of fire in place by tanks and self-propelled artillery, to which they move to oppose a breakthrough by enemy tanks into the depth of the defense, are also prepared.

Antitank obstacles are widely employed to cover directions which are accessible to tanks, artillery firing positions, and the deployment lines of the artillery-antitank reserve.

442. During the organization of antiaircraft defense, special attention is given to the construction of cover, to the camouflage of small units and weapons, and also to the timely warning of small units of the appearance of enemy aircraft.

443. In organizing the defense on a wide front, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- indicate to the commanders of the small units with what weapons and on what directions they are to prepare fire so as to ensure mutual fire support between the defense areas and the protection of the intervals;

- determine the missions of reconnaissance, and the composition of the small units detailed to reconnaissance;

- assign small units with machine guns and guns to defend the intervals and to prepare obstacles, dummy trenches, and other installations in the intervals between the defense areas;

~~SECRET~~

--designate the commanders responsible for guarding the boundaries and flanks, establish continuous observation of the boundaries, and provide observers with means of communication;

--prepare counterattacks of the reserve in the direction of the boundaries and flanks;

--plan the manner of use of vehicles (armored personnel carriers) to move small units to threatened directions;

--plan the maneuver of tank and self-propelled artillery small units in order to reinforce the small units defending in the intervals between defense areas in the event of an enemy attack on these directions;

--determine the composition, missions, and positions of tank ambushes, and also the firing positions of self-propelled artillery being employed as roving guns;

--replenish supplies up to authorized norms, and in certain small units create supplementary reserves of supplies;

444. In the course of combat, the regimental (battalion) commander concentrates artillery and mortar fire against enemy infantry and tanks, to prevent them from wedging into the intervals between defense areas; he reinforces with weapons, at the expense of secondary sectors and those not under attack, the small units which are defending in a threatened direction.

Enemy tanks and infantry which have broken through are destroyed by fire and by the counterattacks of the reserves.

In the event of an enemy breakthrough into the depth of the defense, the small units of the regiment (battalion) prevent the widening of the breakthrough, ensuring favorable conditions for the counterattack of the second echelon of the division (regimental reserve).

## 7. PECULIARITIES OF DEFENSE IN THE SECURITY ZONE

445. The security zone is defended by forward detachments in conformance with the requirements for organizing and conducting a defense on a wide front.

Forward detachments are sent out on the order of the division (corps) commander from units (large units) of the second echelon.

The mission of the forward detachments is to cover the troops occupying the main defensive zone from surprise enemy attacks, to weaken him, and to ascertain his grouping and intentions.

A forward detachment consists of a rifle (motorized rifle, motorcycle) battalion, reinforced with one to two battalions of artillery, two to three antitank batteries, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper and chemical small units. Sometimes a forward detachment may consist of a rifle company reinforced with artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper and chemical small units. Forward detachments are supported by artillery from the main defensive zone, and by aviation.

~~SECRET~~

In all small units detailed to a forward detachment, a supplementary reserve of ammunition is created. Forward detachments are reinforced with medical personnel and medical transport for the evacuation of the wounded.

A forward detachment organizes a defense on a frontage of 3 to 5 kilometers, and conducts battle in prepared positions in the security zone, making wide use of ambushes.

The withdrawal of a forward detachment from its first position in the security zone to subsequent positions is carried out with the permission of the division (corps) commander, and only under the pressure of superior enemy forces.

446. In the issuance of a mission to the commander of a battalion assigned to a forward detachment, the following are pointed out: information about the enemy; the missions of the forward detachment and its reinforcement; the zone of operations of the forward detachment, and the time by which its defense must be ready; the location of the first and subsequent positions in the security zone; the plan for its engineer preparation and for the construction of obstacles; the missions of adjacent forward detachments and of reconnaissance small units operating to the front; the method of coordination with the aviation and artillery supporting the forward detachment; the manner in which the small units defending the first position of the main defensive zone will support the forward detachment by fire; the method of withdrawal; the method of maintaining communications, and coordination signals; and the organization of material, technical, and medical support.

447. Engineer preparation of the security zone is conducted according to the plan of the division commander.

The accomplishment of the work of preparing positions in the security zone is imposed on the small units designated for its defense, and on the small sapper units attached to them. Several positions, reinforced with obstacles, are prepared in the security zone. Each position is prepared in the form of separate sections of trenches. The last position [poslednyaya pozitsiya] (peredovaya pozitsiya forward position) is prepared, in the engineer sense, in a manner similar to the first position of the main defensive zone. [Translator's note: The "last position" referred to here is the closest-in position of the forces defending the security zone. The "forward position", as defined elsewhere in this book, is, in effect, a decoy main line of resistance, occupied by a reinforced combat outpost. As used here, the two positions coincide. See paragraph 454.]

For the purpose of uninterruptedly wearing down the enemy on likely routes of his movement, obstacles are erected and the most important terrain features are prepared for defense. Obstacles are covered by artillery and machine gun fire; passages are left in them for the withdrawal of the small units to the next position, and are closed after these troops have withdrawn through them. The greatest density of obstacles is established along avenues suitable for tanks, and on roads.

The density of obstacles is increased as the distance to the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone decreases.

All important installations in the security zone must be prepared for demolition.

~~SECRET~~

448. The forward detachment commander, in preparing his defense, successively studies all positions on the ground, making a reconnaissance of each of them and, in particular detail, of those positions being prepared on the most important directions. At each position, the forward detachment commander must:

- carefully study the terrain;
- determine the concept of operations and the direction on which the main efforts of the forward detachment are to be concentrated;
- assign combat tasks to small units, and organize coordination;
- determine the boundaries of company defense areas, of antitank strong points within them, and the configuration of the trenches;
- make an accurate determination of the locations of obstacles on likely routes of enemy movement, in front of company defense areas, and in the intervals between them;
- organize a system of fire, coordinated with the obstacles;
- indicate possible directions for the lateral maneuver of fire and small units;
- indicate the method of withdrawal of the small units to the next position;
- organize reconnaissance in the zone of defense;
- establish communications with the reconnaissance small units to his front, and determine the manner of passing them through the forward edge of the detachment's defense;
- indicate the method for the evacuation of wounded;
- indicate the locations of observation posts, the manner in which communications are to be organized, and establish the necessary signals.

449. The combat formation of the forward detachment is usually a one-echelon formation. A reserve is constituted.

To provide greater strength and independence to companies, the forward detachment commander reinforces them with artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper small units.

The forward detachment commander keeps a part of the artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper small units under his own immediate control for the support of the small units.

450. When organizing an antitank defense, the forward detachment commander gives special attention to securing the principle directions suitable for tank movement, the intervals between company defense areas, and the flanks of the small units during their withdrawal to successive positions.

~~SECRET~~

451. The forward detachment commander maintains communication with his small units by radio, visual signals, and by mobile means of communication. Wire communications are established on the most important lines and directions.

452. The forward detachment commander conducts uninterrupted reconnaissance for the purpose of promptly establishing the approach of the enemy, and determining his strength and composition.

During the course of battle, the forward detachment commander must determine precisely the enemy grouping and the character of his actions, organize the capture of prisoners, and ensure their immediate removal to division headquarters.

453. Combat of the forward detachment at each position must be distinguished by stubbornness, for the purpose of delaying the enemy as long as possible, harassing his forces, and inflicting as many casualties upon them as possible.

As he approaches the first position, the enemy is hit with artillery and mortar fire at maximum ranges; his reconnaissance and security small units are destroyed by fire of all types ahead of the forward edge of the security zone; small enemy groups and tanks which have penetrated are destroyed by antitank guns, tanks, and self-propelled artillery firing from ambush, or by small units from the reserve which are designated for this purpose.

With the approach of significant enemy forces, the forward detachment commander uses all his fire power to inflict losses upon the enemy, to repel the attack of his leading units, and to force him to deploy his main body.

Artfully maneuvering his fire, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and small units, using obstacles and smoke, and also coordinating with adjacent forward detachments, the forward detachment commander must not permit the enemy to seize the position from the march, or to wedge into the intervals between defense areas.

Having received an order to withdraw, the forward detachment commander must, in good time, withdraw his small units out from under the blow of superior enemy forces and occupy a defense in the next position. The withdrawal is covered by artillery and mortar fire from the depth, by smoke, and also by the operations of tanks and self-propelled artillery from ambushes.

454. When a forward position has been established in front of the main defensive zone, the forward detachment, with its withdrawing small units, occupies previously prepared areas in it that are not occupied by the forces of the combat outpost. The forward detachment then conducts battle in coordination with the forces of the combat outpost.

~~SECRET~~



8. PECULIARITIES OF THE ORGANIZATION OF DEFENSE BY MECHANIZED  
AND TANK REGIMENTS

455. The mechanized regiment of the mechanized division in the defense may be a part of the first or second echelon of the division, and, depending upon the mission of the division, it may occupy a defense sector or it may be disposed in an area in constant readiness to conduct counterattacks.

The motorized rifle regiment of a tank division in the defense usually comprises a part of the first echelon of the division.

The mechanized (motorized rifle) regiment organizes and establishes a defense in a manner identical to that followed by the rifle regiment.

The tank battalion of the mechanized regiment and any tanks and self-propelled artillery attached to the mechanized (motorized rifle) regiment usually are used to reinforce the antitank defense of the motorized rifle battalions. Upon creation of a regimental reserve, some of the tanks may be attached to it as reinforcement.

456. A tank regiment in the defense can be in the first or second echelon of the division. When a mechanized division occupies a defensive zone, the tank regiment of that division usually comprises the second echelon of the division.

A tank regiment which comprises a part of the first echelon, receives a defense sector and is reinforced with motorized rifle small units, self-propelled artillery, artillery, and sapper and chemical small units.

The defense by a tank regiment is organized in the same manner as is required of a rifle regiment. Battalion areas of the tank battalion form the basis of the defense of the tank regiment.

The tank battalion establishes its combat formation, as a rule, in one echelon, holding in reserve, usually, one tank platoon. The battalion area consists of company defense areas.

The first echelon of the regiment, as a rule, is composed of two tank battalions, reinforced with self-propelled artillery and motorized rifle small units. Motorized rifle small units are disposed in the defense areas of the tank small units, usually in front of the tanks, and also at the boundaries and on the flanks of the small units, but not occupying independent defense areas. Each tank and self-propelled gun is dug in, as is each rifle squad (submachine-gun squad) attached for the reinforcement of the tanks in the defense. Intervals between tanks and tank small units must be covered by the fire of tanks, self-propelled artillery, and motorized rifle small units (submachine-gun small units), and by obstacles. For the defense of the second position, the tank battalion of the second echelon occupies a defense area in readiness to conduct counterattacks.

A tank regiment in the second echelon is disposed in a designated area in constant readiness to conduct counterattacks.

457. The heavy tank and self-propelled regiment is usually used to reinforce mechanized (motorized rifle, tank) regiments. Self-propelled artillery

~~SECRET~~

small units which are attached to a mechanized (motorized rifle, tank) regiment, are distributed among battalions, with consideration for the likely avenues of enemy tank attack, and are used to strengthen the antitank defense. Some of the small units of the regiment may be included in the reserves and in the antitank areas of the mechanized (tank) division.

The heavy tank and self-propelled regiment, may be employed as an entity to repel large enemy tank attacks.

458. In the defense, part of the tank and self-propelled regiment of the rifle (cavalry) division is used to strengthen the antitank defense of the rifle (cavalry) small units defending the first position of the main defensive zone. The rest of the tanks and self-propelled artillery comprise the tank reserve of the division.

The tank reserve of the division usually is designated to repel enemy tank attacks on the most important directions in the division zone of defense, on the flanks, and at boundaries with adjacent units, and during the conduct of counterattacks in conjunction with the second echelons (reserves). It is disposed on the most dangerous avenue of tank advance between the second and third position, or in the vicinity of the third position. Tanks and self-propelled artillery of the tank reserve occupy prepared firing positions and observe camouflage discipline.

The commander of the tank and self-propelled regiment usually commands the tank reserve of the rifle (cavalry) division.

459. The command post of the commander of the tank and self-propelled regiment is located in the area where the tank reserve is disposed. With the beginning of the enemy attack, the regimental commander is found at the observation post of the division commander.

Upon receipt of an order to commit the tank reserve to battle, the regimental commander personally controls the small units of the reserve.

460. The regiment (battalion) of the second echelon (reserve), designated to conduct counterattacks from the depth of the defense, is disposed in a designated area, in open formation, with the observance of camouflage measures, and in constant readiness to move its small units out for the conduct of counterattacks.

The regiment (battalion) of the second echelon (reserve) is given counterattack directions and lines of deployment, to which it moves to repel enemy attacks. The counterattack direction and passages through obstacles are prepared ahead of time and are marked. On deployment lines, emplacements are dug for tanks and self-propelled artillery for the conduct of fire.

The movement of the regiment (battalion) of the second echelon (reserve) to the deployment line is conducted in open formations. Upon approaching the deployment line, the regiment (battalion) deploys into combat formation.

461. The commander of the regiment (battalion) of the second echelon (reserve), on the basis of his understanding of the mission which he has

~~SECRET~~

received and his evaluation of the situation, organizes and carries out, with the commanders of the small units, a reconnaissance of the counterattack directions and the lines of deployment. On reconnaissance, he defines in detail the method of coordination with the artillery-antitank reserve, the anti-tank areas, and the artillery, assigns missions to small units, and determines the method of preparing counterattack directions.

462. The second echelon (reserve) begins its movement for the conduct of a counterattack, on the order (signal) of the division (regimental) commander.

The second echelon (reserve), in coordination with the regiments (battalions) of the first echelon and the artillery-antitank reserve, and with the support of artillery which has moved to the line of deployment, with fire from prepared positions shoots up the enemy who has driven a wedge into the defense, and then, by a decisive counterattack, destroys him and restores the situation.

463. A motorcycle regiment (battalion) in defense is employed for the conduct of reconnaissance of the enemy. It may also operate as a forward detachment during the defense of the security zone, protect an open flank of the defending troops, and conduct battle with enemy airborne landing forces.

A motorcycle regiment (battalion) organizes and builds a defense to conform to the demands laid down for the rifle regiment (battalion).

A motorcycle regiment (battalion), depending on the missions being carried out, may be reinforced by artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper and chemical small units.

#### 9. PECULIARITIES OF ORGANIZATION OF DEFENSE BY A CAVALRY REGIMENT

464. The cavalry regiment may occupy a defense in the first or second echelon of the division, or may be located in the reserve.

A defense sector is assigned to the regiment for defense; a defense area (in a city, a strong point) is assigned to a troop. In separate cases, for the defense of a particularly important objective the regiment may receive a defense area.

During defense on the main direction of the division, the regiment usually occupies a defense sector on a normal front. On a secondary direction, the regiment, as a rule, defends on a wide front.

During defense on a normal front, a regiment occupies a continuous defense sector up to 3 kilometers in width and up to 3 kilometers in depth. During defense on a wide front, the regiment defends a sector 4 to 5 kilometers wide.

During defense on a wide front, the most important directions in the regiment's sector are defended by troops of cavalry; the less important directions may be defended by reinforced cavalry platoons. When there is a significant distance between the troop areas, of defense, the intervals between them are occupied by squads or platoons with machine guns and guns and also are covered by fire from artillery, mortars, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and machine guns. In addition, dummy installations and obstacles

~~SECRET~~

are set up in the intervals.

In all cases, the troop occupies a continuous defense area up to 1000 meters in width and up to 1000 meters in depth.

465. The combat formation of the cavalry regiment in the defense consists of two echelons or of one echelon, an artillery group, antitank areas, and reserves.

A regiment defending on a normal front organizes its combat formation, as a rule, in two echelons. A regiment defending on a wide front, or in the second echelon of a division, organizes its combat formation, as a rule, in one echelon and designates a reserve.

During the organization of the combat formation of a regiment in two echelons, three cavalry troops are usually assigned to the first echelon and one to the second echelon. During the organization of the combat formation of a regiment in one echelon, a reserve is designated, comprising from two reinforced cavalry platoons up to a troop.

466. The defense of a cavalry regiment of the first echelon is organized within the limits of the first and second positions of the main defensive zone.

The first position is created with a depth of 750 to 1000 meters. It is defended by the troops [of cavalry] of the first echelon of the regiment with the aim of inflicting a decisive defeat on the enemy and not allowing him to break through the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone.

The second position is created with a depth of 750 to 1000 meters at a distance of 1.75 to 2 kilometers from the forward edge of the first position. It is defended by a troop of the second echelon of the regiment and by its [the regiment's] reserves, with the aim of stopping and destroying the enemy who has broken through the first position, and also of securing a favorable departure position for counterattacks.

The third position is created with a depth of one to two km at a distance of 3.5 to 4 km from the forward edge of the first position. It is defended by the regiment located in the second echelon of the division and by its [the division's] reserves, with the aim of not permitting an enemy penetration into the depth of the defense, and of securing a favorable departure position for counterattacks.

The regiment of the second echelon of the division, depending on its assigned mission, may be deployed on the third position, or close to it, in constant readiness for counterattacks in dismounted or mounted formation, or, on the instructions of the division commander, it may occupy ahead of time a sector in the third position on the most important direction, with the aim of repelling the enemy attack and of not allowing him to break through into the depth of the defense.

Troop defense areas form the basis of every position. They are connected with each other laterally and in depth by a single system of fire and obstacles. Two trenches are usually dug on each position. The second trench is dug at a distance of 200 to 400 meters from the first.

~~SECRET~~

Troop defense areas at each position are organized with trenches and communication trenches and are prepared for all-around defense.

In each troop defense area, the troop commander creates a troop anti-tank strong point.

With the occupation of the defense when there is no direct contact with the enemy, a combat outpost is sent out from each troop of the first echelon in the strength of a reinforced cavalry squad. In separate instances, by order of the regimental commander, a combat outpost in the strength of a reinforced cavalry platoon may be sent out. The control of the small units assigned to the combat outpost is accomplished by the commanders of the troops which have sent them out.

467. The regimental artillery is usually attached to troops to reinforce their antitank defense. In a defense on a normal front, mortars remain under the direct control of the regimental commander. In a defense on a wide front, mortars, as a rule, are attached to troops.

Depending on the situation and the availability of weapons, the regimental commander forms antitank areas on the most important directions accessible to tanks.

The artillery-antitank reserve in a regiment is formed from organic and attached antitank and self-propelled artillery, and is reinforced by small sapper units with mines. It is usually located with the second echelon (reserve) of the regiment, in readiness to repel an enemy attack, on previously prepared lines, or to support the counterattack of the second echelon (reserve).

The machine-gun troop in the defense, as a rule, is attached by platoons to cavalry troops. Sometimes the regimental commander keeps part of the machine guns of the troop directly under his control.

The antiaircraft battery in the defense is employed by the regimental commander for the antiaircraft artillery protection of the small units of the regiment which are defending in the most important directions.

The greater part of the tanks and self-propelled artillery attached to the regiment are attached to the troops defending the first position in order to reinforce their antitank defense. Some of the tanks and self-propelled artillery are included in the antitank area of the regiment. In addition, some of the self-propelled artillery may be included in the artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment. Self-propelled artillery may also be employed as roving guns.

468. In the assignment of combat missions, the regimental commander points out:

to the commanders of the troops [of cavalry] of the first echelon - which small units are attached to the troops and which small units support them; missions, defense areas, and troop antitank strong points within them; sectors of terrain or terrain features which ought to be especially solidly fortified and stubbornly defended; zones of fire and a system of fire in front of the main line of resistance and in the depth of the defense; places for guns, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and machine guns for the conduct of close-range surprise fire; the number of trenches and communication

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

trenches and their configuration; the method and time schedule for executing engineer works; the places of construction of antitank and antipersonnel obstacles and the locations of passages through them; missions for the security of boundaries and flanks; the position of the combat outpost and its composition; the method of supporting the combat outpost and covering its withdrawal; the method of conducting counterattacks;

to the commander of the troop of the second echelon - which small units are attached; the mission, defense area, and the antitank strong point in it; the zone of fire and the system of fire in front of the second position and in its depth; the number of trenches and communication trenches, and their configuration; the method and time schedule for executing engineer works; the places of construction of antitank and antipersonnel obstacles and the locations of passages through them; missions for the security of boundaries and flanks; the method of fire support for troops of the first echelon; counterattack directions, lines of deployment, and the men and materiel designated for the support of counterattacks;

to the commander of the machine gun troop - how many machine gun platoons and to which troop to attach them; missions, zones of fire, the system of fire, and firing positions (primary and alternate) for machine guns retained under the direct control of the regimental commander; how many machine guns to assign for conducting close-range surprise fire, for antiaircraft defense, and for the support of the combat outpost, and their firing positions; the manner and time schedule for executing engineer works;

to the commanders of small units of attached tanks and self-propelled artillery - the method of employment of tanks and self-propelled artillery, and their distribution among troops; the missions of the tanks and self-propelled artillery assigned to ambushes, and the missions of self-propelled artillery being employed as roving guns;

to the commander of the regimental artillery group - the areas of long range fire, the zones of moving barrage fire in front of the main line of resistance, areas of concentrated fire, and sectors of standing barrage fire in front of the main line of resistance and in the depth of the regimental defense sector; the method of supporting the combat outpost and of covering its withdrawal; the method of securing boundaries and flanks; by what means and in what directions to support the counterattacks of the second echelon (reserve) of the regiment; the distribution of batteries (artillery battalions) for the support of the troops of the first echelon; areas of primary, temporary, and alternate firing positions; the time of readiness to open fire; signals and the method of requesting, shifting, and ceasing of fire;

to the commander of the regimental artillery - the missions of the regimental artillery and of the mortar battery of the regiment; missions for the organization of fire of the artillery assigned to the antitank areas and to the artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment; the areas of the firing positions of the regimental mortar battery and the method of preparing them when the battery remains under the direct control of the regimental commander; the time for the artillery and mortars to be ready to fire; signals for requesting, shifting, and ceasing fire;

to the commander of the regimental reserve - composition of the reserve, missions, defense area, and location; possible counterattack directions, departure positions, and routes of movement to them;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

to the commander of the artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment - composition, missions, and location of the reserve; possible directions of operations, lines of deployment, routes of movement to them, and signals for summoning the reserve;

to the commander of the antitank area - composition and missions of the antitank area, its limits, and the character and method of its engineer preparation;

to the commander of the antiaircraft battery - missions for covering the small units of the regiment from enemy aircraft, and the firing positions of the battery;

to the regimental engineer - missions for engineer reconnaissance; the locations and the density of antitank and antipersonnel obstacles in front of the main line of resistance and in the depth of the regimental defense sector; the places for constructing the most important defensive installations and shelters, as well as installations for command and observation posts, and which of them to equip for antichemical defense; places for constructing passages through friendly antitank and antipersonnel obstacles and the method of closing them, and also places for constructing passages through natural barriers in counterattack directions; the directions of cross-country routes, camouflage tasks; the sequence of execution of engineer works, the beginning and the period of time for their preparation according to priorities; tasks and method of employment of organic and attached small units of sappers (engineers) and means of mechanization;

to the chief of chemical service of the regiment - missions for chemical reconnaissance and observation; which small units and in what measure to protect them with antichemical defense means; where and to what extent to ensure the equipment of shelters in the antichemical sense; tasks and method of employment of the chemical warfare small units of the regiment and of attached small units of chemical warfare troops; the method of employment of smoke equipment for concealing friendly troops, as well as for blinding and wearing down the enemy; a time schedule for the execution of measures for antichemical defense;

469. Horseholders and horses of a regiment of the first echelon are usually located behind the second position of the zone of defense; those of the regiment of the second echelon are usually located behind the third position, dispersed by troops or by platoons under cover as close as possible to water resources, and at a distance which permits quick and concealed return of the horses to the small units.

If the terrain does not permit locating the horses of a regiment of the first echelon behind the second position, and also when a regiment spends a long time in a defense, its horses may be taken back behind the third position of the zone of defense on instructions of the division commander.

During defense in a city, horseholders and horses are located primarily in yards, in gardens, and in parks; stone structures are also used for stabling horses.

During defense in a bridgehead, horseholders and horses, as a rule, are located on the friendly side of the river.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

During defense in a forest, horseholders and horses are located in sectors of the forest inaccessible to tanks. It is forbidden to locate them in separate small groves. In winter, in extreme cold, horses are periodically walked; horses are also covered with horse blankets. In mountains, horseholders and horses are located in areas inaccessible to tanks and near roads and paths. In deserts and steppes, reserve supplies of forage and water are established in the places where the horseholders are located.

In all cases where there is an absence of natural cover for horses, artificial cover is constructed; communication is established with the horseholders. If necessary, a covering force is designated for the security of the horses.

Locations for horseholders and horses are noted during reconnaissance and are usually indicated in the combat order.

#### 10. DEFENSE IN A CITY

470. A large city with permanent buildings and structures creates favorable conditions for defense; troops can turn it into a strongly fortified area.

471. Defense of a city must be all-around, and must consist of inner and outer zones of defense.

Inner zones of defense are created throughout the depth of the city. Their number and configuration are determined by the general plan and size of the city. Positions consisting of systems of centers of defense form the basis of each inner zone of defense. Each center of defense [uzel oborony] usually consists of two or three strong points [opornyy punkt].

The forward edge of the first inner zone of defense is prepared on the edge of the city, or is carried forward if commanding heights are adjacent to the city.

Outer zones of defense are created on the approaches to the city, with their number depending on the terrain and on the availability of the men and materiel assigned for their defense. The distance of the zone nearest the city must be such that it will not give the enemy the opportunity to carry out successfully an artillery preparation simultaneously against the outer zone of defense and against the city.

472. A regiment, depending on the situation, may receive for defense a sector (area) on an inner or outer zone of defense.

A battalion defends a center of defense consisting of two or three strong points.

One or several buildings are used for the creation of a strong point; buildings located at street intersections or on squares are adapted in first priority.

In each strong point, fire is organized in several tiers. Structures interfering with the field of fire are torn down. The greatest number of weapons are located on the lower floors and in semi-basements.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



Every strong point (center of defense) must be adapted for all-around defense and must have mutual fire support with adjacent strong points (centers of defense). Strong points are joined to each other by communication trenches.

Barricades and other antitank and antipersonnel obstacles are established in the streets of the city.

Obstacles are set up in the intervals between strong points and on the approaches to barricades. The approaches to barricades must be covered by flanking and cross fire.

Flamethrowers are set up in houses and on barricades. Loopholes and machine gun positions are established in barricades to permit firing along streets and squares. Passages are left in barricades for the maneuver of friendly small units and the movement of transport. Passages must be carefully guarded and covered by fire and portable obstacles.

Moreover, passages and driveways are constructed within city blocks and existing underground tunnels are adapted for the maneuver of small units within the city. Obstacles are placed in unused underground passages, and their exits are guarded.

Prior issue of large-scale city plans is made to regiments and smaller units.

When adapting stone buildings to the defense, it is necessary:

- to reinforce walls and ceilings;
- to wall up doors and windows with bricks or sandbags;
- to make loopholes and embrasures for machine guns, grenade throwers, and cannon;
- to make lookout slits for observation;
- to prepare semi-basement rooms as positions for weapons;
- to make openings in ceilings to permit communications between floors;
- to reinforce basements and provide several exits from them.

Sapper small units with listening devices are used to detect underground mining activities being conducted by the enemy.

473. Defensive battle in a city usually breaks up into a number of local actions for the retention of strong points. For this reason, every building must be stubbornly defended. Small units defending strong points and centers of defense must be able to conduct battle independently, even when surrounded. Therefore, they are reinforced with artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery, and with sapper, chemical warfare, and flamethrower small units.

474. In combat with the enemy on the approaches to the city, artillery and mortars are employed in accordance with general principles.

~~SECRET~~

In combat within a city, the greater part of the artillery and mortars is attached to battalions (companies). The rest of the artillery and mortars attached to the regiment are included in the regimental artillery group for the support of the small units of the regiment, which are defending on particularly important directions.

The system of artillery fire is based upon the combination of the flanking and frontal fires of guns emplaced for direct fire with the fire of artillery employed for indirect fire.

Artillery and mortars conducting indirect fire are located on the outskirts of the city, in yards, gardens, parks, squares, and stadiums.

475. In the defense of a city, tanks and self-propelled artillery are attached to battalions and companies singly and by platoons.

Tanks and self-propelled artillery firing positions are prepared in stone buildings, or behind stone walls in which embrasures have been made for firing and observation.

476. The regimental commander, having studied his defense sector (area), determines:

--which buildings are the most suitable for preparation as strong points, and how to unite them into battalion centers of defense;

--what small units to attach to battalions, and what units to detail for the support of battalions;

--the organization of the defense of the intervals between strong points and centers of defense, and the construction of communications between them;

--the system of fire and obstacles;

--what structures to equip for antichemical defense;

--[a plan of] maneuver of personnel and weapons within the regimental sector;

--the character and time limits of the engineer preparation of the defense sector.

The battalion commander determines missions for the companies for the defense of each strong point; indicates what small units are being attached to companies and which small units support them; gives instructions regarding the fortification of buildings, and the organization of a system of fire in the center of defense and in strong points; and determines the composition of the reserve.

477. Artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, flamethrower - incendiary weapons, engineer-type obstacles, and infantry antitank weapons are used to combat enemy tanks.

~~SECRET~~

Antitank weapons are concealed in houses, barns, and behind stone walls in which embrasures have been made for firing and observation.

The artillery - antitank reserve is located near street intersections in readiness to maneuver along streets and through alleys, parks, and yards.

478. When organizing antiaircraft defense in a city, the antiaircraft small unit of the regiment (battalion) is used to cover the most important centers of defense (strong points). Platforms for antiaircraft machine guns are built on the roofs of the highest buildings.

Antiaircraft artillery is located in yards, squares, at street intersections, and also in parks and gardens. Firing positions must permit all-around fire.

Observation posts are established on buildings from which good all-around observation can be obtained.

479. The command (observation) post of the regimental (battalion) commander is located in the most important center of defense (strong point). Observation from high buildings is organized.

480. To combat fires in buildings adapted to the defense, the necessary firefighting equipment is prepared, including sand and barrels of water; floors are covered with sand. Easily flammable objects are removed from buildings. Small structures which can facilitate the spread of fire from building to building are torn down.

481. Buildings destroyed during battle greatly change the conditions of observation and the conduct of fire and maneuver. The regimental (battalion) commander must take into account the changes occurring, and make corresponding adjustments in his combat formations and system of fire. If ruined buildings are not occupied by one's troops, they should be mined. In the depth of the defense, routes are cleared and bypasses are constructed for the maneuver of tanks, self-propelled artillery, and artillery, and for the movement of transport.

482. Rear service small units of the regiment (battalion) are moved up close to the combat formations, and are located in places offering solid cover (basements and underground installations). Special attention is given to the regulation of movement.

Supplies and equipment are replenished up to established norms, and additional reserves of ammunition, rations, medical supplies, and drinking water are established in strong points.

All water sources are taken into account, and water supply points are established.

#### 11. DEFENSE OF A RIVER

483. The organization of the defense of a river depends upon its characteristics, enemy actions, and the imminent combat tasks on a given sector of the front.

When insufficient forces are available, a defense is usually established only on the near side of the river.

If sufficient forces are available, it is desirable to establish a defense on both sides of the river or to hold bridgeheads on the far side, if a transition to the offense is anticipated, or if the terrain on the near

~~SECRET~~

side is low and open. The depth and width of a bridgehead is determined by the senior commander.

The defense of a bridgehead must be distinguished by special firmness and stubbornness.

For the direct cover of bridge crossings, positions in the bridge area are established.

A regiment (battalion) in all cases organizes the defense of a river on one bank only.

484. When organizing a defense of a river on the near bank only, the main line of resistance of the main defensive zone, as a rule, is placed at the water's edge. The system of fire is organized as for a defense on a normal front, with the aim of destroying the enemy on the water by flanking fire and cross fire. Islands are occupied by designated small units in order to prevent the enemy from forcing a surprise crossing, and for the purpose of conducting flanking fire along the river. If a small river has a valley whose slope is favorable for defense, the main line of resistance can be moved back on this slope. In this case, a reinforced combat outpost is established on the river bank, and the flood lands of the river are mined.

In sectors suitable for the crossing of enemy amphibious tanks and other self-propelled crossing equipment, the density of antitank fire is increased, antitank mine fields are laid, the river bank is scarped, underwater obstacles are emplaced, and fords are mined.

Positions of infantry weapons must not be disclosed prior to the beginning of the enemy crossing.

Special small units are designated to destroy small enemy groups.

Reserves are located in areas from which they can rapidly move by concealed routes to any crossing point in order to throw back into the river enemy small units which have crossed.

485. If the width of the river is insignificant, the first and second positions of the main defensive zone can be established on the far side of the river. These first and second positions are occupied by first echelon regiments.

The third position is established on the near bank and is usually occupied by the regiment of the second echelon.

For reinforcing the antitank defense of the first and second positions, tanks and self-propelled artillery and guns and batteries to be used for direct fire should be detailed as a supplementary measure.

486. When it is impossible to organize a defense on both sides of a river, the far bank is occupied by a reinforced combat outpost, for which a forward position [peredovaya pozitsiya] is prepared.

The actions of the small units defending the forward position are supported by artillery and mortars from the main defensive zone.

~~SECRET~~

487. When organizing the defense of a river on the near bank, the commander of a regiment (battalion) of the first echelon, in addition to performing the usual functions, must do the following:

--determine the presence of fords and sectors suitable for an enemy crossing, particularly by his amphibious tanks and self-propelled crossing equipment;

--organize uninterrupted observation of likely enemy crossing sectors;

--organize a system of fire which will provide for the destruction of the enemy on the water by flanking fire and cross fire, create the necessary density of antitank weapons on sectors suitable for the crossing of enemy tanks, and organize ambushes consisting of tanks and guns;

--organize the defense of islands;

--organize the mining of fords and sectors suitable for forcing a crossing, the scarping of banks, and the construction of other obstacles;

--designate small units to destroy small groups of the enemy in order to prevent them from discovering all our weapons prior to the beginning of the forcing of the river;

--dispose the second echelon (reserve) in an area from which it can move quickly and unobserved to any crossing point in order to throw back into the river enemy units which have succeeded in crossing;

--concentrate all local means of crossing (small boats, ferries, rafts, barges, and steamboats) on the near bank, organize a guard for them and, if necessary, destroy or sink them.

Hydrotechnical installations in the sector of the regiment, which can be used to raise the water level and flood the lowlands adjacent to the river, are kept under strong guard. If it is impossible to use them, they are destroyed on order of a senior officer.

Functioning crossings are destroyed on order of the division commander, and approaches to them are mined and covered by fire.

When defending on the far bank, the commander of a first-echelon regiment organizes a defense on the basis of general principles.

488. When not in direct contact with the enemy, the regimental (battalion) commander must continually conduct reconnaissance for the purpose of making timely determination of the approach of the enemy, of his direction of movement, and of his concentration areas.

Having detected the enemy, the regimental commander, to prevent enemy movement to the river, calls for air strikes on him and hits him with artillery and mortars from alternate firing positions.

The reinforced combat outpost, supported by artillery, mortars, and aviation, firmly holds its positions on the far bank, not permitting the movement of the enemy to the river and the organization of a crossing there.

~~SECRET~~

The necessary means of crossing are made available, and fords are prepared to permit the withdrawal of the reinforced combat outposts to the near bank.

With the beginning of the enemy's forcing of the river, the regimental (battalion) commander, to prevent an enemy landing on the near bank, destroys enemy personnel, equipment, and crossing equipment with the concentrated fire of artillery, mortars, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and all infantry weapons. He also calls for air strikes on the enemy.

In case of an enemy landing on the near bank, it is immediately destroyed by fire of all types and by the counterattacks of second echelons and reserves.

489. When a division defends on both banks of a river, the commander of the second-echelon regiment, which is defending on the near bank, must:

- organize timely reconnaissance of likely directions for counterattacks;

- organize the firm defense of bridges and fords to ensure the rapid crossing of the regiment to the far bank during the conduct of counterattacks;

- have in readiness means for the mining and obstruction of fords and of sectors of the river suitable for crossing, in the event that the enemy breaks through to the river;

- prepare artillery and mortar fire to support the regiments of the first echelon of the division;

- coordinate his actions with the regimental commanders of the first echelon, and maintain uninterrupted communication with them.

490. For the organization of the defense of a bridgehead, the regimental (battalion) commander, in addition to the normal measures, must do the following:

- reinforce the battalions (companies) with antitank artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery;

- organize the construction of a widely developed net of trenches and obstacles in the defense sector (area), and take steps to create reserves of ammunition, fuel, lubricants, chemical equipment, and rations;

- take steps for the insurance and concealment of supply and evacuation across the river.

Counterattacks by second echelons and reserves are widely used to repel enemy attacks. To this end, the maneuver of tanks, self-propelled artillery, and artillery, especially antitank artillery, is planned for the most threatened directions.

Bridgehead positions [predmostniye pozitsii] established to furnish close-in protection to bridge crossings consist of continuous trenches constructed in a manner which will permit repelling enemy attacks coming from

~~SECRET~~

both the front and flanks.

The distance of the beidgehead positions from the bridge crossings must provide protection of the crossing from the fire of enemy infantry and from enemy ground observation.

In the defense of bridgeheads [platsdarmy] and of bridgehead positions, special attention is given to creating strong antitank and antiaircraft defenses, to antichemical defense, and to securing the flanks. In order to increase the firmness of the defense, flanks must be adjoined to the river and covered by obstacles.

## 12. DEFENSE OF A SEACOAST

491. A regiment, in defending a seacoast, receives a sector up to 15 km in width.

The regimental commander constructs most densely, and according to the rules for defense on a normal front, the defense of important objects and sectors of the coast suitable for landing operations; while the defense of the remaining sectors is constructed according to the rules for defense on a wide front.

On sectors where there is little likelihood of landing operations, continuous observation is established by means of patrols and field sentinels.

492. In organizing the defense of a seacoast, the regimental (battalion) commander, besides carrying out the usual measures, is required:

- to determine the sectors of the coast most accessible for enemy landing operations;

- to organize the construction of obstacles against enemy landing equipment and landing personnel, on sectors of the shore where enemy landing operations are most probable;

- to study the system of observation, recognition, and communication which is available on the coast;

- to establish coordination with coast artillery, with the naval machine gun-artillery [pulemetno-artilleriskiy] and machine gun units (small units) which are located within the sector of the coast which is being defended;

- to organize a system of fire which will ensure destroying the enemy on the water with cross fire;

- to provide for the use of attached artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery for the destruction, by direct fire, of enemy landing craft and landing equipment during their approach to the shore, and also to destroy enemy troops which have landed;

- to organize tank ambushes, a system of antitank fire, and to establish antitank obstacles on sectors suitable for amphibious tank landings;

- to provide for designation of measured distances on the water by the use of floating markers;

~~SECRET~~

--to organize the reconnaissance and preparation of march routes, and also the preparation of firing positions for the wide maneuver of attached artillery;

--to locate the second echelon (reserve) at such a distance from the shore as will enable it to destroy, by a counterattack, landed small enemy units before they have a chance to consolidate on the shore;

--to indicate methods of recognizing friendly vessels;

--to plan measures to combat an enemy airborne landing force;

--to plan measures for moving the civil populace from the sector defended by the regiments;

--to plan the possible utilization of coast artillery searchlights and other illuminating equipment to light up naval targets approaching the shore.

Moreover, the regimental commander indicates to the commander of the regimental artillery group sectors for fixed barrages and zones of rolling barrages to be used on enemy landing equipment during its approach to the shore and during the landing of the landing forces; he also indicates the sectors of the shore for which the greatest density of artillery fire must be prepared.

493. During the approach of an enemy landing force, the regimental (battalion) commander destroys it by artillery, mortar, tank, and self-propelled artillery fire, not permitting a landing on the shore. The infantry, using the fire of all its weapons, destroys enemy personnel and landing equipment. Enemy forces which have landed must immediately be destroyed on the shore by a counterattack of the second echelon (reserve).

If the enemy succeeds in capturing a sector of the coast and the counterattack fails, the regimental (battalion) commander must concentrate artillery and mortar fire to cut off the part of the enemy force which has landed from the approaching main forces, not permitting him to extend his landing sector, and ensuring favorable conditions for a counterattack by the second echelon (reserve) of the division (regiment).

494. Primary and alternate command (observation) posts of the regimental (battalion) commander are selected so as to ensure sufficient distance and fullness of observation of the sea and the coast on the most likely sectors for enemy landings.

Communication with coast artillery units (small units) is established: by wire -- with regimental facilities; by radio and mobile means of communication -- with the facilities of the regiment and of the coast artillery.

### 13. PECULIARITIES OF DEFENSE IN A FOREST

495. The defense of a regiment (battalion) in a forest is based on a system of fire of battalion (company) areas which are prepared for all-around defense, combined with the use of counterattacks and of obstacles.

~~SECRET~~



Battalion and company defense areas are organized with a consideration of the location of wooded sectors and their peculiarities.

The main line of resistance of the main defensive zone, depending upon the situation, is located in front of the edge of the forest or within the forest.

The system of fire must ensure the covering of the intervals between battalion defense areas.

The greater part of the gun artillery is attached to small units and is used primarily for direct fire.

Tanks and self-propelled artillery are used within the second echelons (reserves) for carrying out counterattacks; they also may be attached to companies of the first echelon to reinforce their antitank defense. In these cases, they must be covered by the dispositions of rifle (motorized rifle) small units and by obstacles.

The second echelon (reserve) of the regiment (battalion) is located in areas organized for all-around defense and close to roads, clearings, and lanes.

496. In organizing a defense in a forest, the regimental (battalion) commander is required:

- to give attention to the defense of forest projections/sections of forest, projecting or jutting from the forest/ including them within the borders of the battalion (company) defense areas;

- to organize a system of fire to cover effectively all obstacles, roads, and lanes, and to cover road junctions and lanes with cross fire;

- to plan the method of using tanks and self-propelled artillery;

- to attach the greater part of the gun batteries to the battalions (companies) for direct fire;

- to plan the preparation and method of conducting artillery fire on separate sectors of roads, on road and lane intersections, and on close-in and distant approaches to the main line of resistance, from concealed firing positions;

- to organize the clearing of terrain in front of the main line of resistance and within the defense to improve observation and the conduct of fire;

- to organize the preparation of observation posts in trees located to afford the opportunity to observe enemy movements on separate road sectors, in clearings, along lanes, and on the approaches to the main line of resistance;

- to cover firmly, with obstacles and antitank weapons, roads, forest lanes, clearings, and avenues passable to tanks in the depths of the forest, and to organize the construction of defensive works on road and lane intersections;

~~SECRET~~

--to reconnoiter, prepare, and clearly mark directions of counterattacks and of routes for the maneuver of small units;

--to plan measures for fighting forest fires;

--to strengthen the defense and security of command and observation posts.

Clearing of the forest to improve observation and the conduct of fire is carried out without disturbing camouflage.

The following are used as obstacles in a forest: barbed wire laced among the trees, antitank barriers, and road blocks and abatis in combination with mine fields and land mines /fugasami/.

Overhead cover is constructed over artillery pieces, mortars, and sections of trenches in order to protect personnel, weapons, and combat equipment from being hit by fragments of shells which have exploded in the tree tops.

497. In the defense in a forest, wide use is made of ambushes by minor small units, and of fire from trees.

Well organized mortar fire, the sudden and rapid conduct of counterattacks, and skillful use of bayonets and grenades take on a great significance.

Routes for maneuver and directions of counterattacks must be studied and clearly marked.

498. Rear service small units of the regiment (battalion) are located near roads and close to the combat formations of the small units.

Particular attention is given to the security and defense of the rear service small units and to the organization of traffic regulation on routes of supply and evacuation.

#### 14. PECULIARITIES OF DEFENSE IN WINTER

499. The defense of a regiment (battalion) in winter is organized according to general principles.

The regimental (battalion) commander, in organizing a defense, besides the usual measures, is required:

--to prepare road junctions, inhabited points, and wooded sectors most firmly for the defense;

--to destroy or to mine, and to cover with artillery and mortar fire, all cover in front of the main line of resistance which could be utilized by the enemy;

--to secure boundaries and flanks in consideration of the possibility of the turning or envelopment of the combat formation by enemy ski small units;

--to plan measures for destroying enemy ski small units which break through into the depth of the defense;

~~SECRET~~

--to supply the personnel of the second echelon (reserve) with skis, and to organize promptly the marking of routes for the conduct of counter-attacks;

--to take measures for increasing the maneuverability and mobility of artillery, especially of antitank artillery, and of tanks and self-propelled artillery on the field of battle; and to prepare, in advance, routes of movement for them;

--to plan the construction of heated shelters for personnel and of shelters for horses.

500. All defensive installations and obstacles are constructed taking into account the depth of the snow. When there is a deep snow, extensive use is made of snow trenches, communication trenches, and ramparts constructed of snow.

The main line of resistance is selected, where possible, behind obstacles difficult of passage by enemy infantry and tanks (deep snow, ravines, rivers and streams with steep banks).

If the main line of resistance extends along the edge of a river (lake), it is necessary to plan the laying of mines and the blasting of holes in the ice on various sectors of the river (lake) near the friendly bank.

In a protracted defense, it is necessary systematically to check the condition of mine fields, barbed wire, and other obstacles, to strengthen these obstacles promptly, and to take measures for keeping them in a constant state of readiness. Trenches, communication trenches, and roads are kept free from snow. Roads are equipped with snow fences and marked with stakes. Winter camouflage is continually maintained and improved.

501. Under winter conditions, it is necessary: to provide for the timely supply of small units with warm clothing and winter camouflage cloaks; to ensure the timely supply of hot food and tea to personnel in the small units; to take measures to protect personnel against frost bite; to check more frequently the vigilance of small units in the defense, especially at night, and during freezing weather, blizzards, and snowstorms; to relieve more frequently the small units which are located on the first position of the main line of resistance and also on the combat outpost; and to organize the periodic warming of personnel.

Aid stations are moved closer to the small units and are located in heated premises. Medical transport is closed-in /winterized/ and is supplied with blankets and warm clothing for the wounded; measures are taken for the quick evacuation of wounded.

For the maintenance of weapons, combat equipment, and transport in a constant state of combat readiness, it is necessary to provide for the timely supply of small units with winter lubricants, antifreeze, equipment to increase the mobility of transport, and also means for thawing and heating.

502. In organizing a defense during the muddy season, the regimental (battalion) commander, in addition to the usual measures, plans the following;

~~SECRET~~

--the preparation of roads and cross-country routes for the maneuver of artillery and the movement of transport, especially in important directions, and their constant maintenance in passable condition;

--the construction of sumps in trenches and communication trenches, in firing positions, and in shelters, and also their strengthening in order to prevent cave-ins and washouts;

--measures for supplying and equipping transport with means for increasing its mobility and for pulling itself out of the mud;

--the stocking of extra supplies of ammunition with the small units and on positions; and the stocking of extra supplies of fuel, lubricants, rations, forage, heating fuel, and building materials for defensive installations and shelters;

--the utilization of cart and pack transport to supply ammunition, fuel, lubricants, rations, forage, and for evacuation of the wounded;

--the equipping of dugouts for small units for drying clothing and equipment, and for warming personnel;

--measures for keeping combat equipment and weapons clean;

--construction of installations for command and observation posts in locations which preclude their being flooded and which insure the maintenance of communications with small units;

--preparation, when necessary, of boats and rafts for keeping contact with the small units and for the maneuver of weapons.

#### 15. PECULIARITIES OF DEFENSE IN MOUNTAINOUS-WOODED TERRAIN

503. The organization of a regimental (battalion) defense in mountainous-wooded terrain depends upon the character of the mountainous areas and the importance of the direction being defended.

On plateaus and in wide valleys, a regimental (battalion) defense is organized according to standard principles.

In directions difficult to traverse, a defense is built up on the firm holding of individual, especially important sectors of the terrain, through the creation of a system of company and platoon strong points.

Strong points are organized in such a manner that they lie across roads, paths, ravines, gorges, and passes. Intervals between strong points are covered by reconnaissance and combat outposts supported by fire from the strong points.

In the defense of a narrow mountain valley, it is necessary to locate weapons in such a manner that the valley is covered with cross fire to the entire depth of the defense; it is necessary to organize the construction of strong antitank and antipersonnel obstacles in the valley, and to cover them with the fire of antitank guns, self-propelled artillery, and machine guns;

~~SECRET~~

it is necessary to assign small units to hold firmly commanding heights bordering the valley, and to cover the approaches to these heights with obstacles and with mortar and artillery fire.

504. In organizing a system of fire in mountains, the regimental (battalion) commander is required:

--to prepare multitiered flanking and oblique fire in front of the main line of resistance, especially on boundaries and flanks, in the depth of the defense, and in the intervals between defense areas (strong points); in this respect, some of the weapons may be placed in adjacent sectors;

--to use extensively the fire of howitzer artillery and mortars to cover approaches and dead spaces in front of the main line of resistance and within the defense.

In a defense on a wide front, the greater part of the artillery and mortars attached to the regiment are attached to the small units which are defending separate areas (strong points) and directions.

The fire of the regimental artillery group is used by the regimental commander for the support of the battalions located on the most threatened directions.

In organizing the antitank defense, it is necessary to give special attention to covering the exits from defiles, gorges, and woods, and also belt roads, fords, and river crossings.

Antitank areas are formed on the main tank approaches.

The artillery-antitank reserve is located on tank approaches. When there are a number of tank approaches in the regimental defense sector, and a lack of routes for maneuver between them, artillery-antitank reserves are created to secure each approach.

Antitank weapons are echeloned in depth on tank approaches. Guns which occupy positions on the heights must be so located that they can hit enemy tanks operating in the valley.

505. In mountains, the importance of antiaircraft defense is significantly increased.

In organizing an antiaircraft defense, it is necessary to plan, in first priority, the cover of the small units which are defending especially important areas (strong points) and directions.

Antiaircraft artillery attached to a regiment is employed under centralized control.

In the interest of successful combat against low-flying aircraft operating along valleys, the antiaircraft small units of the regiment (battalion) should be deployed at various elevations relative to the valley.

For protection from enemy air attacks, recesses in cliffs, and caves are used.

Observation posts should be established on heights, ridges, and slopes which permit good observation, and spaced at distances which permit visual contact to be maintained between them.

506. Tanks and self-propelled artillery are attached to those battalions (companies) which are defending roads, defiles, bridges, and river crossings, and are employed to conduct fire from previously prepared firing positions, for counterattacks along valleys, and also for operations from ambushes.

507. The peculiarities of engineer works in mountains are:

--the construction of trenches, communication trenches, and emplacements in rocky ground, with the use of stones and timber, covered with a layer of earth, for breastworks;

--the construction of spurs [*podyezlnykh putey*] and trails;

--the preparation of landslides and demolitions on sections of roads that are difficult to traverse;

--the construction of cable-suspension roads and bridges across mountain rivers, gorges, and other barriers;

--the wide use of explosives in the execution of engineer works.

In addition, measures are planned to warn and to protect small units from landslides and the flooding of rivers.

508. When organizing control of small units, particular significance is attached to the skillful employment of radios, and of visual and sound signalling.

The regimental (battalion) commander gives particular attention to organizing communications with the small units occupying separate heights, and between small units on the boundaries of the regiment (battalion).

509. If the enemy wedges into the depth of the defense, commanding heights and road junctions must be stubbornly held. The second echelon (reserve) of the regiment (battalion), supported by artillery and mortars and using concealed approaches, destroys the enemy who has wedged into the defense by a counterattack in his flank and rear.

510. The mountain rifle regiment (battalion), as a rule, is employed for the defense of high mountain areas which are difficult to traverse, mountain passages, ridge lines, and plateaus in order to prevent the enemy from turning and enveloping the flanks of the defending troops, and to combat enemy airborne forces dropped on passes and plateaus.

511. Regimental (battalion) rear service small units are disposed at road and trail junctions. Aid stations are established closer to the small units.

Transportable reserves of supplies, as a rule, are increased: reserves of heating fuel, and water are established. Small units additionally are supplied with items of special clothing and equipment. During operations

in high mountain areas, moreover, the personnel of the small units are supplied with warm clothing; measures are planned for warming personnel and for the timely evacuation of the sick and wounded.

At junctions of automobile roads with wagon roads, and of wagon roads with pack trails, reloading points are established for supplies, and transfer points are established for the wounded.

#### 16. PECULIARITIES OF DEFENSE IN DESERTS AND STEPPES

512. In deserts and steppes, the regiment, as a rule, defends on a wide front. When defending water sources, populated areas, and other important objectives, the regiment usually occupies a defense on a normal front.

The battalion usually occupies a continuous defense area. In some cases, the battalion organizes a defense in the form of separate company areas.

Defense areas are prepared for all-around defense. Reserves of ammunition, water, rations, and heating fuel are established within the defense areas.

Reconnaissance is sent out in the intervals between defense areas and on the flanks. At night, these intervals may be occupied by minor small units. Reconnaissance is organized and conducted at a greater depth than under normal conditions.

513. In the organization of defense in deserts or steppes, the regimental (battalion) commander must do the following:

- give particular attention to the organization of all-around reconnaissance, and to the security of boundaries, flanks, and the intervals between defense areas;

- organize the setting up of artificial landmarks in front of the main line of resistance and signs in the depth of the defense;

- anticipate measures for the camouflage of the small units and defensive installations; and for the construction of dummy installations;

- organize the defense and security of water supply points;

- organize the preparation and staking out of routes for the second echelon (reserve) in the counterattack directions and on routes of supply and evacuation;

- provide guns, tanks, and self-propelled artillery with camouflage materials;

- provide for the wide use of radio, mobile means of communication, visual and sound signals, and also the employment of liaison officers.

514. In deserts and steppes, particular significance is attached to the organization of antitank, antiaircraft, and antiairborne defense.

For the support of the antitank defense, positions for the artillery-

~~SECRET~~

antitank reserve are prepared on the flanks and in the intervals between defense areas. The artillery - antitank reserve of the regiment is deployed in readiness to move swiftly to any threatened direction.

Small units of the regiment (battalion) and defensive installations must be carefully camouflaged from enemy ground and air observation, and must be reliably covered from air attacks. Supervision of the strict observance of camouflage, both day and night, is increased.

All small units of the regiment (battalion), especially the second echelon (reserve), must be prepared to combat enemy airborne forces. For this purpose, routes of march to likely drop (landing) zones of enemy airborne forces are reconnoitered and prepared in advance.

515. Artillery, mortars, tanks, and self-propelled artillery must be prepared for rapid maneuver. For this purpose, directions are reconnoitered and staked out and are identified by markers visible at night. To insure timely maneuver, a minimum reserve of fuel, lubricants, and water for vehicles is created.

516. When organizing the rear, the regimental (battalion) commander, in addition to the usual types of supply, plans for the supply of heating fuel and water, and establishes norms of their expenditure.

In all cases, a water reserve must be established in the regiment (battalion). A reserve of fuel and lubricants, in addition to a water reserve, is created on combat and transport vehicles.

Water sources are guarded by specially detailed small units.

Inspection of water sources and their purification is a basic task of the reconnaissance of the sanitary condition of an area.

The condition of armament, motors, and the moving parts of vehicles must be regularly checked. Air filters of motors are systematically cleaned of dust and sand.

~~SECRET~~



## Chapter IX

### DISENGAGEMENT AND WITHDRAWAL

517. Withdrawal is a maneuver employed in those cases when, only through a temporary loss of part of a territory, it is possible sharply to change an unfavorably developing situation and to put one's own troops in a more advantageous position.

Withdrawal can be employed:

-- for the occupation of a defense on a more advantageous line in order to repel a superior enemy attacking force, and to establish the conditions for a subsequent transition to the offensive by one's own troops;

-- for shortening the length of the defensive front and detailing forces and equipment for active operations in other, more favorable directions.

518. When there is close contact with the enemy, withdrawal is preceded by the disengagement and the breaking of contact with the enemy by the main forces of the regiment (battalion). It is advantageous to carry out the disengagement and the breaking of contact with the enemy by a surprise move at night; in all cases, disengagement and breaking contact with the enemy is effected in an organized manner and by stealth.

Disengagement and withdrawal of a regiment may be carried out only by order of the division commander.

After the disengagement, a regiment may effect a withdrawal independently, as part of the main forces of the division, or in the rear guard of the division.

519. Disengagement of the main forces of a regiment (battalion) is carried out under the protection of small units detailed from battalions (troops, companies) of the first echelon, and reinforced by tanks, self-propelled artillery, artillery, mortars, machine guns, and sapper small units.

In order to ensure a successful disengagement during active enemy operations, the regimental (battalion) commander, when necessary, counterattacks the enemy with part of the forces of the first echelon, reinforced with tanks and self-propelled artillery. This is done for the purpose of halting the enemy, after which the commander quickly disengages the main force under the protection of designated small units, artillery fire, and smoke. Under other conditions, it is necessary to employ an unexpected, concentrated thrust by tanks, self-propelled artillery, and men, with the support of concentrated artillery and mortar fire, against the most threatening enemy grouping. This is done in order to stun him and, exploiting his confusion, to disengage and break contact with him.

Small units detailed for cover remain on the captured positions and, for the purpose of deceiving the enemy, carry on the same combat operations as those which preceded the disengagement. Reconnaissance is increased on the flanks and toward the enemy.

Tanks and self-propelled artillery usually are attached to the small units detailed for cover for joint operations with them, and are also used for operations.

~~SECRET~~

from ambushes. They are the last to withdraw, and are kept in readiness to fire in order to cover the withdrawal of the infantry and to prevent attacks by enemy tanks and infantry on the disengaging small units of the regiment (battalion).

The regimental artillery group, during a disengagement, changes firing positions by leap-frogging, either by battalion or by battery. Support of the small units detailed for cover must, however, be uninterrupted. The change of artillery firing positions is ensured by advance reconnaissance of routes of movement and areas of the new firing positions, and by the organization of a commandant's service.

520. The breaking of contact by the main forces of a regiment which has disengaged and their withdrawal are executed under the cover of a rear guard (rear detachment), which occupies in good time a line designated for it to the rear.

To the rear guard (rear detachment) of a regiment is usually detailed a battalion (in the cavalry, a troop is detailed to the rear detachment) of the second echelon of the regiment; it is reinforced with artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, sapper small units, and flamethrower-incendiary and smoke equipment. To a tank battalion, which is assigned as a rear guard, there are attached, in addition, rifle small units (small units of submachine gunners). The rear guard (rear detachment) must be able to carry out assigned missions independently without counting on the support of the main forces.

The main forces of a regiment, on crossing the line occupied by the rear guard (rear detachment), withdraw to the assigned area in the order designated by the regimental commander.

After the main forces of the regiment cross the line occupied by the rear guard (rear detachment), the small units covering the disengagement quickly break contact with the enemy on the order (signal) of the regimental commander, withdraw behind the line occupied by the rear guard (rear detachment), and join the regiment.

After the main forces of the regiment have broken contact with the enemy, part of the artillery which remained under the regimental commander's control is, on his instructions, attached to battalions, and part continues to remain under the control of the regimental commander.

All artillery of the regiment must be in constant readiness for rapid deployment on intermediate lines.

When there is a general rear guard for the division, a regiment withdrawing as part of the main forces of the division is covered by a rear party /tylnoy pokhodnoy zastavoy/ consisting of a reinforced company (in the cavalry, of a reinforced platoon), and by flank guards /bokovymi pokhodnymi zastavami/ up to a reinforced platoon in strength.

When deploying for combat as part of the main forces of the division, a regiment organizes its combat formation according to general principles.

521. A regiment (battalion) assigned to a rear guard must halt the advancing enemy, gain the time necessary for the main forces of the division (regiment) to

~~SECRET~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

break contact with the enemy, and ensure their unhindered withdrawal to the designated area. For this purpose, the rear guard occupies and firmly holds the line assigned to it, making extensive use of tank ambushes, obstacles, and demolitions in the designated zone of withdrawal.

The operations of a rear guard must be decisive and active.

522. The enemy, during his approach to the line being defended by the rear guard, is hit with artillery and mortar fire; his reconnaissance and security are destroyed by fire or by short counterattacks supported by artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery. The rear guard repulses an enemy tank and infantry attack by using all types of fire.

Artillery operating as part of a rear guard destroys by fire the enemy who is attacking frontally and is turning the flanks, and supports the counterattacks of friendly small units.

At a set time the rear guard, with the permission of the division (regimental) commander, and under the cover of designated small units, of the fires of artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery, and of smoke, disengages and withdraws to the next line.

523. During a withdrawal, as a counteraction to enemy envelopments and turning movements, the regimental commander pushes out flank guards (flank detachments), reinforced by artillery, including antitank artillery, and by tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper small units. Flank guards (detachments) seal off parallel and belt roads, prepare antitank and antipersonnel obstacles, and halt the enemy until the passage of the main forces.

For the purpose of the timely discovery and warning of the troops concerning the dropping (landing) of enemy airborne troops, special attention is paid to establishing observation of the air.

Defiles, bridges, crossings, and road intersections on the withdrawal routes, and also important lines must be occupied and held by previously dispatched forward detachments until the passage of the main forces. These forward detachments are reinforced by antitank and antiaircraft artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and by sapper and chemical warfare small units.

524. When a regiment is withdrawing, and also during combat on selected lines, reconnaissance must determine the location, grouping, and intentions of the enemy. Reconnaissance at night must be especially active.

525. As the withdrawal proceeds in the zone of operations of the regiment (battalion), the destruction of bridges, roads, lines and centers of communications, and also of other installations is carried out, and various obstacles are set up.

The regimental commander, on the basis of the instructions received, determines what objectives are to be destroyed, and when and by whom, and what objectives must be destroyed only by his order. He appoints the commanders and sapper small units responsible for this.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

526. The regimental commander, on receiving an order for a withdrawal, reaches a decision and indicates the following:

- information concerning the enemy;
- the purpose of the withdrawal of the regiment and the order of the withdrawal of adjacent units;
- the order and time of disengagement and of breaking contact with the enemy by the main forces of the regiment;
- the composition and missions of the small units covering the disengagement of the main forces of the regiment, the time until which these small units must remain on the occupied positions, the manner of their operations, and the order of their disengagement;
- the composition of the rear guard (rear detachment), what lines it must hold, and until what time it must hold them;
- the method of coordination of the small units of the regiment with the attached and supporting units (small units) and with adjacent units during the disengagement and withdrawal;
- the route of march and the order of organization of the regiment;
- the ultimate line of the withdrawal and possible intermediate lines for the conduct of battle by the main forces, and also the missions of the small units in case of the deployment of the regiment;
- measures for counteracting enemy envelopments and turning movements;
- measures for the destruction of enemy airborne forces on the withdrawal routes;
- tasks for the reconnaissance of the enemy and terrain in the zone of withdrawal and on the flanks;
- the manner of organizing antitank, antiaircraft, and antichemical defense, and other measures for combat security;
- the method of marking his dispositions, and signals for the identification of friendly aircraft;
- measures for holding defiles, bridges, and crossings until the passage of the regiment;
- the manner of evacuation of the wounded and sick, of armament, combat equipment, and stocks of supplies;
- the time, route, and order of withdrawal of the rear service small units of the regiment;
- measures for the engineer support of the withdrawal, and the order of destruction (mining) of various objects during a withdrawal;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

-- the method of organization of control and communications.

The commander of a battalion which is withdrawing as part of the main forces of a regiment makes a decision, in which he settles questions in accordance with the decision of the regimental commander, and he issues a combat order.

527. The regimental (battalion) commander, with his staff, directs the disengagement of the small units and withdraws with the rear guard (rear detachment), while the battalion commander withdraws with the small units covering the disengagement, and after the main forces have disengaged. After the assembly of the main forces, the regimental commander, with his staff, moves with the main forces of the regiment.

During a withdrawal, special attention is given to the maintenance of communications with the rear guard (rear detachment), flank guards, reconnaissance small units, and adjacent units. Communication is established by means of radio, mobile means of communication, and by visual signals.

528. Prior to the beginning of a disengagement, all the wounded and sick and also all unnecessary supplies must be evacuated; rear service small units of the regiment (battalion), not needed for the immediate support of combat operations, are withdrawn ahead of time to areas designated by the regimental commander.

The small units covering the disengagement, and also the battalion (cavalry troop) detailed as the rear guard (rear detachment), are fully supplied with ammunition and fuel and lubricants, and are reinforced with medical transport. Evacuation of the wounded from the small units covering the disengagement is carried out by all available means.

~~SECRET~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

## Chapter X

### COMBAT IN ENCIRCLEMENT AND ESCAPE FROM ENCIRCLEMENT

529. A regiment which finds itself encircled can wage a sustained battle and, by its aggressive operations, must assist the execution of the division's combat mission.

The sustained conduct of combat in an encirclement is achieved by:

- the stubbornness, decisiveness, initiative, and stamina of all personnel of the regiment;
- the maintenance of uninterrupted communications with the senior commander and the nearest units and small units located outside the encirclement;
- the timely delivery by air of armament and supplies to the surrounded units;
- the rapid rendering of support to the surrounded units by artillery fire, by air attacks, and by the operations of troops located outside the encirclement.

530. High combat efficiency of a regiment (battalion) is a decisive condition for success in battle in an encirclement. The personal example and heroism of each soldier, and comradely assistance are a guarantee of the successful conduct of battle in encirclement.

A lack of forces must be made up by the activity of operations, the tenacity and stubbornness of the small units of the regiment (battalion) in combat, skillful maneuver, the expert employment of surprise, and the application of military cunning.

531. Encirclement does not arise suddenly. It usually is the result of the enemy's appearance on the flanks and rear of the regiment (battalion).

It is necessary to distinguish a complete encirclement, when the enemy has succeeded in establishing a continuous front around the regiment (battalion), from a situation in which separate small units or groups of the enemy have appeared in the rear of the regiment (battalion). In the latter case, there is no encirclement.

532. Daring and timely organization of opposition to the encirclement has decisive importance.

For opposition to the encirclement, the commander of a regiment (battalion) is obliged to:

- strengthen security; organize, additionally, reconnaissance and ambushes, especially on the flanks and boundaries;
- strive not only to avert the encirclement, but also to destroy the enveloping small units of the enemy;
- organize the concentration of artillery and mortar fire in the threatened

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

directions;

- move the second echelon (reserve) and the artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment to the threatened direction;

- occupy important points with the aim of not allowing the enemy to gain the flanks and rear of the regiment (battalion);

- take measures for the construction of obstacles on the most important approaches to the flanks and rear.

533. In the presence of an evident threat of encirclement, the commander of a regiment (battalion) is obliged to:

- organize quickly a defense of the important points and equip them for antitank defense, with the aim of preventing complete encirclement;

- regroup men and materiel, especially tanks, self-propelled artillery, artillery, and small units of sappers with mines, in the threatened direction;

- take measures for counteracting enemy attacks, boldly maneuvering tanks, self-propelled artillery, artillery, and small units of sappers with mines, thus not permitting the enemy to break up the combat formation of the regiment (battalion);

- organize control and communications for the support of combat in an encirclement, and establish uninterrupted communications with adjacent units and with the commander of the division (regiment);

- ensure for the small units the ammunition, fuel, lubricants, and rations necessary for combat, and establish norms for their expenditure;

- evacuate the wounded and sick to the rear, as well as materiel and documents not needed for combat;

- evacuate wounded and sick horses to the rear.

The regimental (battalion) commander reports to the division (regimental) commander and informs adjacent units about measures that he has taken.

If the enemy succeeds in surrounding separate small units, the regimental (battalion) commander, while continuing to carry out his combat mission and without waiting for the order of the division (regimental) commander, must organize without delay a breakthrough of the front of the encirclement for a link-up with the surrounded small units.

534. During combat of a regiment (battalion) in an encirclement, before measures are taken for restoring the situation or escaping from the encirclement, the commander of the regiment (battalion) must:

- conduct continuous reconnaissance of the enemy;

- form a continuous front for all-around defense, reliably secure the boundaries between small units, and firmly hold the occupied area;

~~SECRET~~

~~SECRET~~

-- organize antiaircraft and antitank defense, antichemical protection, and the construction of obstacles, particularly in the directions of probable enemy attacks;

-- maintain high combat spirit in the small units of the regiment (battalion), their organization, and their constant readiness for combat;

-- establish and maintain coordination with the troops operating outside the encirclement, and promptly mark his positions for friendly aviation;

-- designate a reserve, including in its composition a part of the tanks and self-propelled artillery;

-- by fire and counterattacks, resist enemy attacks directed at dispersing the combat formation of the regiment (battalion), and destroy the enemy who has wedged into the defense;

-- quickly and covertly maneuver small units, especially small units of tanks and self-propelled artillery, shifting them to the threatened directions, and promptly reconstitute reserves;

-- locate the command (observation) post in an area inaccessible to tanks or in an antitank area (in a battalion antitank center of resistance), organize uninterrupted communications with the small units, and maintain radio communications with troops operating outside the encirclement;

-- organize the collection and shelter of the wounded;

-- give instructions regarding the location of rear service small units, transport, and horses;

-- organize the receipt and assembly of supplies dropped from planes;

-- establish a strict schedule of expenditure of materiel of all types.

535. Escape of the regiment from the encirclement is carried out on the order of the division commander; escape of the battalion is carried out on the order of the regimental commander.

Escape from encirclement in small groups and without combat equipment is inadmissible.

The regimental (battalion) commander must determine by reconnaissance weak points in the disposition of the enemy, the presence and locations of his reserves and weapons in depth, and also the nature of the terrain in the direction chosen for the breakthrough.

536. In his decision for escape from encirclement, the regimental (battalion) commander provides for:

-- the grouping of men and materiel for the breakthrough;

-- the sector and direction of the breakthrough;

~~SECRET~~



~~SECRET~~

-- the composition of the small units detailed for carrying out the breakthrough, for covering the breakthrough, and their missions;

-- the composition of the small units (screening forces), designated for securing the flanks during the breakthrough, and their missions;

-- the time and methods of breakthrough;

-- sectors for conducting demonstrations;

-- measures for ensuring the secrecy and surprise of the breakthrough;

-- the order of removal of equipment, horses, and transport from the encirclement;

-- the order and sequence of withdrawal of the small units covering the breakthrough;

-- the method of coordination with the troops operating outside the encirclement;

-- the organization of control and communications during the breakthrough, the method of identifying his positions for aviation, and the method of identifying friendly troops operating from outside;

-- measures for the evacuation of the wounded and sick, the order of removal of rear service small units, and the order of removal of materiel and documents.

The regimental commander, on the basis of the directives he has received, determines which objects must be demolished and designates the commanders and small sapper units responsible for this.

537. For carrying out the breakthrough, the regimental (battalion) commander assigns no less than half of all forces and the greater part of the artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery. Some of the small units are detailed as covering forces, with the mission of holding the occupied positions and not giving the enemy an opportunity to constrict the front of encirclement.

Screening forces are detailed to resist the enemy's closing of the front of encirclement, which has been broken in the course of the breakthrough.

Small units which are detailed as covering forces and screening forces are reinforced by artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and small units of sappers with equipment for erecting obstacles.

Tanks and self-propelled artillery which are attached for the reinforcement of the small units detailed as covering forces and screening forces are located together with them, and are employed primarily for destruction of attacking enemy tanks.

Reserves are located in the center of the combat formation of the regiment (battalion), in readiness to support the combat of the small units detailed as covering forces, and to exploit the success of the breakthrough.

~~SECRET~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

538. Small units detailed for the breakthrough attack the enemy after an artillery preparation. Tanks and self-propelled artillery may be enlisted for participation in the artillery preparation; during this time, they usually conduct direct fire. During a breakthrough at night, it is sometimes advantageous to attack suddenly, without an artillery preparation. In this case, the artillery opens fire with the beginning of the attack.

Small units detailed as covering forces must deceive the enemy by active operations and divert part of his forces from the direction of the breakthrough.

539. Artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery move out of the encirclement together with the small units to which they are attached. Artillery under the direct control of the regimental (battalion) commander moves out of the encirclement together with small units carrying out the breakthrough, supporting them with fire.

540. Rear service small units form into a column and move out of the encirclement immediately after the small units carrying out the breakthrough. For covering rear service small units, small units may be assigned from the reserve on the instructions of the regimental commander. Transport is used in first priority for evacuation of the wounded and sick.

In a cavalry regiment, horseholders and horses of the troops carrying out the breakthrough move out of the encirclement behind their small units; with them also move the horseholders and horses of the small units detailed as covering forces and screening forces.

541. Small units detailed as covering forces hold the occupied positions and do not permit the constriction of the front of encirclement by the enemy. They begin the withdrawal on the order of the regimental (battalion) commander. Their withdrawal must be supported by artillery and mortar fire and covered by screening forces. Tanks and self-propelled artillery are the last to withdraw, covering by fire and attacks the withdrawal of the infantry and artillery. The reserve of the regiment (battalion) may be employed for ensuring the withdrawal of the small units detailed as covering forces. Screening forces withdraw on the order of the regimental (battalion) commander.

During the escape from the encirclement, the regimental (battalion) commander and his staff, as a rule, move with the small units making the breakout.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

Chapter XI

RELIEF OF UNITS AND SMALL UNITS

542. The relief of a regiment (battalion) can take place during offensive or defensive combat. The order and sequence of relief are established by the division (regimental) commander.

A relief, as a rule, is carried out at night. Careful preparations must be made for it, and it has to be carried out rapidly and secretly.

To prepare for a relief, not less than two to three hours of daylight are allowed each for regiment and battalion.

When an order for a relief is received, the staffs of the regiments (battalions) which are turning over and taking over a sector (area) jointly work out the plan of relief.

543. In the defense, before the relief begins, the commander of the regiment (battalion) which is taking over the defense sector (area) and the commander of the regiment (battalion) turning over the defense sector (area), together with their subordinate commanders, conduct a reconnaissance in order to study and to determine in detail on the ground:

- the disposition of the enemy, his weapons, and the nature of his operations;
- the combat formation and the disposition of the weapons of the units (small units) turning over the defense sector (area);
- the system of fire and observation, and the regime of fire;
- the location of mined obstacles and other obstacles and their preparedness;
- the terrain sectors on which the relief will take place, and their boundaries in relation to terrain features;
- the routes for the movement of the small units to the relief sectors, and the routes for the movement to assembly areas of the small units which have turned over the defense areas.

After conducting a reconnaissance, the regimental (battalion) commander makes a decision, points out the order of relief, assigns missions to his subordinate and supporting small units, and organizes coordination. At the established time, the regimental (battalion) commander moves the small units into the departure area for the relief.

544. For the concentration of the small units of the regiment which is taking over a defense sector, a departure area is designated before the relief takes place; for the regiment (battalion) which is turning over a defense sector (area), an assembly area is designated. Depending on the mission, conditions of the terrain, and the nature of enemy operations, the departure area and the assembly area of the two regiments are designated at a distance of six to eight km from the main line of resistance.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

Assembly areas of battalions after the relief has taken place are designated by the regimental commander at a distance of three to four km from the main line of resistance; assembly areas of companies are designated by the battalion commander at a distance of 1.5 to 2 km from the main line of resistance.

The departure area (assembly area) must be concealed from enemy ground and air observation, and be provided with concealed routes of approach and with good approaches or communication trenches leading to the relief sectors (areas).

545. When small units of a regiment (battalion) are to be moved to relief sectors (areas), each company (battery) which is turning over a defense area (firing positions) assigns guides, usually noncommissioned officers, but in some cases officers. These guides, under the command of an officer, arrive ahead of time at the departure area to escort the small units which are taking over the defense areas.

At the established time, the commanders of small units bring their small units into the relief areas designated to them.

546. Small units which are taking over defense areas, on arrival in their designated areas, immediately proceed with the relief. The relief of the regimental (battalion) small units usually is carried out in the following order: rifle small units are relieved first; next, small units of heavy machine guns and heavy grenade launchers; then the antitank guns, self-propelled artillery, and mortars of the regiment (battalion); and finally the regimental artillery group.

The commanders of the small units which are turning over defense areas hand over their positions, give the commanders of the small units which are taking over defense areas all information pertaining to the enemy and his conduct, familiarize them with the location of obstacles and the direction of fire, and hand over range cards, antitank range cards, and documents pertaining to the locations of mine fields and other mined obstacles.

547. In order to retain the stability of the combat formations during the relief, artillery and mortar small units are moved out in first priority and are relieved, as a rule, after the newly arrived rifle small units, small units of heavy machine guns and heavy grenade launchers, tanks, and self-propelled artillery have carried out the relief and have occupied the location (positions) indicated to them.

All documents which are accepted from the artillery and mortar small units are carefully checked against the terrain.

548. Tanks and self-propelled artillery which occupy firing positions within the combat formations of rifle (motorized rifle) small units, as a rule, are reassigned to the small units which have arrived for the relief, if the relief is carried out by units (small units) of the same division (regiment).

If it becomes necessary to relieve tank and self-propelled artillery small units, the relief, as a rule, takes place during the night, 24 hours after the rifle (motorized rifle, cavalry) small units have been relieved, with the observance of measures of concealment. Caterpillar tracks are concealed.

549. All engineer installations, including mine fields and other mined obstacles, are taken over only after they have been verified on the ground and compared with the documents dealing with them.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

When engineer installations are taken over, their purpose, condition and degree of preparedness are determined in detail.

When mine fields and other mined obstacles are taken over, their boundaries, existing passages, and their degree of preparedness are determined in detail. When necessary, the condition of obstacles is spot-checked.

The taking over of engineer installations is organized by the commanders of small units; the taking over of mine fields and other mined obstacles is organized by the regimental engineer, with the aid of officers and noncommissioned officers of the sapper small unit of the regiment.

550. During a relief, the regimental (battalion) commander who is taking over a defense sector (area), as a rule, is situated at the observation post of the regimental (battalion) commander who is turning over the sector (area), from where both commanders direct the relief of their respective small units.

During the course of the relief, staff officers of the regiment (battalion) check the order of relief of the small units and the readiness of weapons to open fire in case of surprise enemy operations.

Upon the completion of a relief, the regimental (battalion) commander who has taken over the defense sector (area) must personally check whether his small units and weapons have correctly occupied their positions.

Wire communication of the units (small units) turning over a defense sector (area) are kept intact until the communications of the units (small units) taking over the defense sector (area) are organized. In certain cases, wire communications which have special importance are turned over to the units (small units) taking over the defense sector (area).

The transmittal of messages by radio when a relief is taking place is forbidden.

551. It is the responsibility of the regimental (battalion) commander who is turning over the defense sector (area) to furnish protection for the relief. It is his duty to take all measures to prevent a surprise enemy attack during the relief.

For the protection of the relief it is necessary to do the following:

- increase observation and security, and also antitank and antiaircraft defense, and antichemical protection;

- have the artillery and weapons of the small units in complete readiness for immediately opening fire;

- keep the second echelon and reserves in readiness for operations;

- rigidly maintain the established regime of the small units on the sector (area), of the relief;

- keep in constant communication with all small units, especially with the artillery.

~~SECRET~~

~~SECRET~~

If, during the relief, the enemy goes over to the attack, the regimental (battalion) commander who is turning over the defense sector (area) controls the small units who are repelling the enemy attack, and also exercises authority over the newly arrived relieving small units.

The relief of the regiment (battalion) is resumed as soon as the enemy attack is repulsed.

552. The regiment (battalion) which is taking over the defense sector (area) must be in constant readiness to repulse a possible enemy attack. After the relief, the same course of conduct that existed before the relief is strictly observed.

The regiment (battalion) which has taken over the defense sector (area) begins to conduct reconnaissance by raids and ambushes only with the permission of the division commander.

553. Small units which have turned over defense areas, with the permission of the regimental commander, and after personnel and armament have been checked, are moved before daybreak into an assembly area.

Second echelons and reserves are the last to be pulled out of the relief area.

For the best study of the enemy and the most rapid familiarization with the defense areas, in some instances an officer and several noncommissioned officers from the regiment (battalion) which turned over the defense sector (area), and who are well acquainted with the defense sector (area) and the enemy disposition, may remain for 24 hours.

554. Regimental (battalion) commanders report through channels concerning the turning over and acceptance of a defense sector (area).

The moment when the regimental (battalion) commander who has taken over the defense sector (area) submits a report to his immediate superior is regarded as the termination of the relief.

555. A relief in the defense is recorded in an official document, which is signed by the regimental commanders receiving and turning over the defense sector.

During a relief, the battalion commander who takes over the defense area receives /from the commander being relieved/ a battalion defense chart which shows the disposition of his small units, the fire system, and the location of engineer installations and obstacles. The latest information pertaining to the enemy dispositions is also marked on the chart.

556. The relief of a regiment (battalion) in the attack is carried out on a predetermined line.

The regimental (battalion) commander who is taking over the sector, upon the receipt of the mission, details the situation on the terrain, makes a careful estimate of the time for the timely movement to the line designated for relief, makes

~~SECRET~~

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

a decision, assigns missions to the small units, organizes coordination, control, and communications, and sends out reconnaissance and combat security.

The regimental (battalion) commander must pay special attention to taking measures for repelling possible enemy counterattacks.

The regiment (battalion) which is taking over a sector is deployed in combat formation in the rear of the unit (small unit) which is turning over the sector and, under the cover of artillery fire and, when it becomes necessary, also under the protection of smoke screens, moves to the line designated for the relief, and acts in accordance with the assigned mission.

The unit (small unit) which is turning over a sector supports with its weapons the regiment (battalion) which is taking over the sector, and, after the relief takes place, it acts according to the order of the division (regimental) commander.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

## Chapter XII

### THE MOVEMENT OF UNITS AND SMALL UNITS

557. A regiment (battalion) can complete a tactical (administrative) movement on organic or attached transport, on combat vehicles, and by a foot march; it can be moved by rail, by water, or by air.

A cavalry regiment completes a tactical (administrative) move in mounted formation or by rail.

A zone or a march route is indicated for the movement of a regiment, while a march is indicated for a battalion.

The regiment must arrive in the designated area on time and in full combat readiness, regardless of its manner of movement.

558. The movement of troops must be carried out, as a rule, at night or under other conditions of limited visibility. Independent of the time and the means of movement, particular attention must be given to camouflage, the organization of antiaircraft and antichemical defense, and, during tactical movements, the organization of antitank defense.

559. The regiment completes a march independently or as part of the division. When completing a march as part of the division, the regiment may move on a separate march route, in the column of the division's main body, or may comprise the advance guard (rear guard) of the division.

The march formation of the regiment, depending on the circumstances, the tasks, and the number of march routes set aside for the division, consists of one, two, or three march columns.

In the movement of the regiment on several march routes, each battalion may move on a separate march route; or the main body may move on one march route, while one battalion moves on another march route.

The cavalry (tank and self-propelled) regiment moves on one march route in a single march column.

A battalion march formation consists of a single march column.

Regimental rear service small units on the march move in an independent column at a distance of up to 500 meters (in the cavalry, up to 250 meters) from the tail of the column of the main body of the regiment. Battalion rear service small units move at the tail of the battalion column.

Distances between vehicles and small units are indicated depending on the speed of movement. During daytime movement, distances between battalions are 500 meters; between companies and batteries, up to 100 meters; between platoons (vehicles), up to 25 to 50 meters. At night distances are shortened.

In anticipation of an enemy air attack, distances between battalions (troops) are increased up to 1 to 2 kilometers.

~~SECRET~~



560. The speed of movement of troops on the march depends on the tasks, the condition of the troops, the state of the roads, the weather, the time of the year, and the time of day.

The average speed of movement of troops on the march and the length of the daily movement of the regiment (battalion) constitute:

Units (small units) and means of movement	Average speed of movement km per hour		Length of the daily movement in kilometers	
	Day	Night	Normal	Forced
Rifle units and small units:				
a) foot march	4	4	30	up to 45
b) personnel lightly loaded	5	5	-	-
c) on skis	4-5	4-5	-	-
d) transported by vehicles (armored personnel carriers)	20-25	15-20	up to 150	up to 200
Cavalry units	7	4-5	50	up to 75
Tank and mechanized units	15-25	15	up to 150	up to 200
Artillery units:				
a) tractor prime movers	12-18	12	up to 100	up to 150
b) vehicle prime movers	20-25	15-20	up to 150	up to 200

561. Long and short halts, overnight halts (daytime rest), and one-day halts are designated for conserving the strength of personnel and horses and for looking after equipment.

A 10-minute short halt is made by rifle units marching on foot after each 50 minutes of marching, and also by cavalry units after one to one and a half hours of movement. Rifle units transported by vehicles (armored personnel carriers) and mechanized, tank, and motorized artillery units make a 20-to 30-minute halt after every two to three hours of movement.

~~SECRET~~

Rifle units on foot and cavalry units which are moving on separate march routes make the first short halt after 30 minutes of movement. Rifle units transported by vehicles (armored personnel carriers) and mechanized, tank, and motorized artillery units, depending upon the length of the column and the condition of the march route, make the first short halt after one to two hours of movement. The senior commander determines the time for the first short halt when several units are moving on a single march route.

The organization of the columns at short halts is not disturbed. The vehicles are parked on the right side of the road at intervals of not less than ten meters. Personnel dismount from the trucks and dispose themselves on the right side of the road.

Long halts for all arms are designated usually at the beginning of the second half of a day's march and have a length of two to four hours; during night movements long halts are not designated.

Small units of the regiment (battalion), for disposition at a long halt, move off the road and dispose themselves for rest in the areas which are designated for them. Camouflage measures are observed. Hot food is served to the personnel. Regimental (battalion) march security halts on advantageous lines and continues to maintain security.

An overnight halt is designated after a day's movement. If the movement is made at night, then a daytime rest is designated instead of an overnight halt.

A one-day halt (one-day rest) is designated: during a normal march, after three to four days of movement; during a forced march, after two to three days of movement.

Halts, overnight halts (daytime rest), and one-day halts must be designated well ahead of time in areas having favorable conditions for camouflaging troops, while avoiding the use of inhabited points. The troops, at the same time, must be prepared for repelling an enemy ground or air attack.

562. The beginning of a movement is determined by the passage of the initial point (line). The movement of columns is regulated by lines. Phase lines for the regiment (battalion) are usually designated for each one to two hours of movement.

The head of the column of the main body of the regiment (battalion) passes the initial points and phase lines at the appointed time.

563. In organizing and executing a march, small units must be given time for sleeping and eating, and water discipline must be observed. It is necessary to check on the adjustment of personal equipment and footgear and on the condition of the horses, arms, equipment, and transport.

Before the beginning of a march, no more than a battalion (artillery battalion) is allowed to congregate in a single area. In the cavalry, no more than a regiment is allowed to congregate in a single area.

~~SECRET~~

564. A regiment (battalion) on the march must strictly observe the established order and the evenness of movement.

The movement is made along the right side of the road. The left side of the road is used for passing and for oncoming traffic. Small rifle units marching on foot and small cavalry units may move along both shoulders of the road.

Personnel marching on foot or on horseback, and tanks, self-propelled artillery, and all types of vehicles move in the formation in the places assigned them.

Stopping of vehicles is permitted only on the right shoulder or on the right side off the road.

The passing of one column by another is made with the permission of the senior officer.

565. In anticipation of a clash with the enemy, reconnaissance on a march must promptly disclose the advance of the enemy and determine his strength, composition, direction of movement, and the nature of his actions. For reconnoitering the enemy, the regiment sends out a reconnaissance detachment (separate mounted patrol) or separate reconnaissance patrols. A battalion marching along a separate route sends out separate reconnaissance patrols. In addition, on the march, the regimental headquarters receives information about the enemy from higher headquarters, adjacent units, and reconnaissance aircraft.

566. Troops on the march are protected by march security.

Tasks for march security are:

-- protecting the troops being secured from a sudden enemy ground attack and, by active operations, creating for them the most advantageous conditions for deploying and entering combat;

-- promptly warning the troops of the appearance of enemy aircraft, tanks, or of a chemical attack;

-- not allowing the enemy reconnaissance to pierce the zone of movement of the troops which are being secured.

567. A regiment which is moving toward the front is protected:

-- to the front, by an advance guard (when proceeding independently or when proceeding along a separate route as part of the division);

-- to the front, by a leading detachment (golovnym otryadom) (when proceeding in the division advance guard);

-- on the flanks, by flank guards (bokovymi pokhodnymi zastavami);

-- to the rear, by a rear party (tylnoy pokhodnoy zastavoy);

-- by local security.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

The advance guard (leading detachment) is detailed in the strength of a reinforced battalion.

A cavalry regiment moving toward the front, in all cases, is protected by a leading detachment consisting of a reinforced troop. A tank and self-propelled regiment is protected by an advance party consisting of a reinforced company.

Flank guards and rear parties in the regiment are sent out in strength of up to a reinforced company (in the cavalry and in tank and self-propelled regiments, in strength of a platoon).

For local security in a regiment, each battalion sends out patrols (from cavalry troops, patrol members /dozornyye/).

A regiment marching in the column of the main body of the division sends out only local security.

A regiment, when proceeding along two or three march routes, does not designate a general advance guard, but the columns are guarded to the front by advance parties /golovymi pokhodnymi zastavami/.

The distance of the head of the column of the main body from the tail of the column of the advance guard (leading detachment) depends on the situation. The average distance is:

--up to six kilometers for a rifle regiment moving on foot and for a cavalry regiment;

--up to twelve kilometers for a rifle regiment moving on vehicles (armored personnel carriers) and for mechanized and tank units.

The distance of the head of the column of the advance guard from the tail of the column of the leading detachment, when moving on vehicles (armored personnel carriers), can be up to eight kilometers.

Advance parties, flank guards, and rear parties are sent out to a distance of up to three kilometers.

568. A regiment, in moving from the front toward the rear, is protected:

--on the side of the enemy, by the rear guard (when proceeding independently or on a separate march route as part of the division);

--on the side of the enemy, by a rear detachment (when proceeding as the rear guard of the division);

--from the flanks, by flank guards;

--by an advance party along the route of movement;

--by local security.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

A cavalry regiment moving from the front toward the rear is, in all cases, guarded by a rear detachment. A tank and self-propelled regiment is guarded by a rear party.

In a regiment, a reinforced battalion is usually detailed as the rear guard (rear detachment). (In the cavalry regiment, it is a reinforced troop; and, in the tank and self-propelled regiment, a reinforced company is detailed as a rear party).

A regiment, moving as part of the main body of a division which has a general rear guard, is covered by a rear party consisting of a reinforced company (in the cavalry, a reinforced platoon), and by flank guards consisting of up to a platoon each.

A general rear guard is not designated when a regiment is proceeding along two or three march routes, but the columns are protected by rear parties.

The distance of the regimental rear guard (rear detachment) from the tail of the column of the main body depends upon the situation and may reach five kilometers.

The distance of a regiment, which is moving as the rear guard of a division, from the tail of the column of the main body of the division depends on the situation and may reach ten kilometers.

The advance parties, sent out ahead on the route of movement, move at a distance of up to five kilometer from the head of the column.

569. A regiment marching to a flank is protected:

- by a flank guard [bokovoy avangard] on the threatened flank (in an independent movement along a separate march route);

- by a flank detachment on the threatened flank (when moving in the flank guard of the division);

- by an advance party, in the direction of the movement;

- to the rear, by a rear party;

- by local security.

A cavalry regiment marching to a flank in all instances is protected by a flank detachment. The tank and self-propelled regiment is protected by a flank guard.

In a regiment, a reinforced battalion is usually detailed as the flank guard (flank detachment). (In the cavalry regiment, it is a reinforced troop; in the tank and self-propelled regiment, a reinforced company is detailed as a flank guard).

In a flank march, and when necessary during other types of marches, stationary

~~SECRET~~

flank security, consisting of up to a reinforced platoon, is moved out on the most important belt roads, forest lanes, and concealed approaches along the flanks of the march route. After the passage of the regimental column, the security then joins the tail of the column.

570. A battalion which is moving on a separate march route, or in the advance guard (leading detachment), in the rear guard (rear detachment), or in the flank guard (flank detachment) of a regiment, sends out an advance party in the direction of the enemy in strength of up to a company; in the remaining directions, it sends out advance parties in strength of up to a platoon, or it sends out points [dozory].

Advance parties send out points.

During overnight halts (daytime rest) or one-day halts, march security becomes security at the halt, or is replaced by newly designated security at the halt.

571. The antiaircraft defense of the regiment (battalion) on the march is organized in accordance with the measures being carried out by the division (regimental) commander.

The regimental (battalion) commander must:

- organize air observation, warning, and communication;
- indicate the recognition signals of airplanes, and the method of and signals for identifying small units to friendly aircraft;
- assign tasks to antiaircraft small units for the cover of the regiment (battalion) on the march, and indicate the order of their displacement;
- designate small rifle units for alert duty and machine guns to deliver fire on low-flying enemy aircraft;
- plan camouflage measures and the employment of routes covered from air observation;
- organize the protection of the column from enemy air attacks in passing through defiles, crossing bridges, and traversing river crossings;
- indicate the method of operations of the small units in case of an enemy air attack.

572. Air observation, warning, and communication posts move as part of the march security and in the column of the main body. Some of the posts may be stationary, having been sent out ahead of time under the cover of reconnaissance.

Antiaircraft small units move in the columns, ready to repulse enemy air attacks or to take up promptly firing positions for the purpose of covering individual sectors of the march route, especially defiles, bridges, and river crossings.

As soon as a warning signal is received concerning the appearance of enemy aircraft, all antiaircraft small units prepare for the conduct of fire. The columns

~~SECRET~~

disperse and, depending on the situation, continue the march or halt. In case the march is not halted, the columns increase their speed; distances between vehicles are increased up to 100 meters. In case the march does halt, personnel quickly jump off the vehicles on the order of the commander and take cover; transport and equipment are camouflaged. Cavalry small units dismount in case the march is halted, occupy the nearest cover, and camouflage themselves. With the appearance of enemy aircraft, the antiaircraft small units and the small units which were detailed to fire on low-flying enemy aircraft repel their attack.

Once the enemy air attack has been repulsed, the column immediately resumes the march, on a signal given by the regimental (battalion) commander; measures are taken to give aid to the wounded, for which purpose the necessary means are left there.

If an enemy air drop (landing) takes place near the route of march, the regimental (battalion) commander must immediately take measures to destroy it and must report it to a senior officer.

573. In organizing antitank defense on the march, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

- organize the observation of the ground and the warning of the appearance of enemy tanks;
- distribute the artillery, including antitank artillery, throughout the column;
- reinforce the small units assigned to security with antitank artillery;
- detail the artillery-antitank reserve of the regiment, reinforcing it with small sapper units equipped with means for setting up engineer obstacles;
- designate the lines of possible deployment of the regiment for repelling tank attacks.

In case enemy tanks appear, the regiment acts in accordance with the requirements laid down for a meeting engagement.

In case minor enemy tank groups appear, they are destroyed by the small security units. The regiment continues the march.

574. In organizing the engineer support of the march, the regimental commander must:

- organize the engineer reconnaissance of roads, bridges, crossings, areas of halts, overnight halts (daytime rest), one-day halts, areas of troop concentration, water sources, and possible lines of deployment;
- detail a march support detachment for the regiment and assign its missions;
- take measures for preparing water sources and water supply points, and for the construction of cover in the areas of long halts, overnight halts (daytime rests), and one-day halts, and in the concentration area;
- detail small sapper units to sectors of roads which are difficult to pass,

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

for ensuring the movement of artillery and transport, and, if necessary, attach sapper small units to battalions moving in independent columns;

-- provide for camouflage measures during the march and during disposition at a halt;

-- provide for the timely procurement of means of improving performance, which are to be supplied to the combat and transport vehicles.

575. A march support detachment for the regiment is detailed in strength up to a rifle company (in the cavalry, up to a platoon), reinforced with not less than a sapper platoon with road-building and other special vehicles and a squad of chemical troops.

The detachment must carry out:

-- engineer and chemical reconnaissance of the roads, bridges, and crossings on the route of march;

-- the removal of obstacles on the roads, and the reconnaissance and preparation of by-passes of bad sections of road;

-- the repair of roads and the construction of cross-country routes;

-- the repair of bridges and the preparation of crossings across small rivers.

Furthermore, the march support detachment may be used for reconnaissance and for removing mines in the concentration areas of the regiment.

The march support detachment sends out patrols for its own local security.

576. In organizing antichemical defense on the march, the regimental (battalion) commander must:

-- organize chemical reconnaissance, observation, and warning;

-- provide the small units with means of antichemical defense;

-- provide for measures for decontaminating terrain, weapons, combat equipment, and transport, and also for rendering aid to those made casualties by poisonous substances.

The regimental chemical small unit is primarily used for chemical reconnaissance. For this purpose, chemical reconnaissance patrols are assigned to the advance guard (leading detachment) and to reconnaissance small units. Chemical small units attached to the regiment move in the advance guard (in the main body) and are prepared to decontaminate weapons, combat equipment, transport, and the terrain.

Contaminated sectors of the terrain which are discovered on the march route are marked off, and roads to bypass them are indicated. In the event there are no roads to bypass them, passages are made or chemical defense means are employed to overcome them.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

When the enemy aircraft warning signal is given, all personnel, in addition to taking antiaircraft defense measures, immediately bring into the position of "readiness" [nagotovye] individual chemical defense equipment. When the chemical attack begins, they put it on.

Those afflicted with poisonous substances are immediately given first aid, and weapons, combat equipment, and transport are decontaminated. The borders of the contaminated sectors are marked off, and commandants' posts are set up.

577. Upon receiving the order for a march, the regimental commander organizes reconnaissance and issues a warning order, in which he indicates the time of readiness for moving out, the extent of each day's movement, and the measures for preparing the small units for the march.

578. The organization of the march and of the march formation for the regiment (battalion) in anticipation of a clash with enemy ground forces must correspond to the purpose of the forthcoming operations.

In organizing a march, the regimental commander must:

- take into consideration the distance of the enemy ground forces and the possibility of clashing with them;

- determine the extent of each day's movement and the time necessary to complete the march;

- evaluate the route of the march, keeping in mind the possibility of attack by enemy aircraft and tanks.

Making the decision for the march, the regimental commander determines:

- the goal of the march and the time necessary to complete it;

- the regiment's route of march;

- the manner of forming the column;

- the lines of a possible clash with the enemy and the order of deploying the regiment for combat;

- the composition and missions of the small units assigned to reconnaissance;

- the composition and missions of the march security;

- the composition and missions of the march support detachment;

- the time at which the security and the main body will cross the initial point (line) and the phase lines;

- the areas of long halts, overnight halts (daytime rest), and one-day halts;

- measures for antiaircraft, antitank, and antichemical defense;

- measures for the material and technical supply of the regiment;

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

-- the organization of control and communications.

579. To ensure a night march by the regiment (battalion), it is necessary: to reconnoiter the route of the march before nightfall and organize the commandant's service; to take measures to repair roads, bridges, and river crossings; to select guides who are well acquainted with the terrain; and to put markings on vehicles (trailers, guns) which can be seen well in the darkness.

Before a night march, personnel must be given sufficient time during the day for rest and eating.

On a regimental (battalion) night march, distances are decreased and blackout is strictly observed. The march security distance ahead is decreased, and local security is strengthened.

The movement of the head of the column is completed in such time that before daybreak there is sufficient time for the small units marching behind to close in to their halting places and to camouflage themselves.

The switch from a daytime to a night march is organized before darkness sets in and is activated on a prearranged signal, either during the movement and before darkness sets in or after the regimental (battalion) column has stopped for a halt.

580. A regimental (battalion) march in a forest is ensured by strong reconnaissance and by the all-around security of each column.

March security must be capable of independently overcoming obstacles and barriers. The distance of the security and the distances between small units in the column of the main body are shortened. Roads, lanes, and trails on the route of march are thoroughly reconnoitered.

Signs which can be easily seen are set up on roads, lanes, and trails, showing the directions to the nearest populated points and the distances to them. Movement control posts are established at road intersections and junctions, and at road sectors where passage is difficult.

To insure the movement of vehicle columns on forest roads and lanes, mounted patrols are organized. Where necessary, the road being traveled is widened and cleared of trees.

In a roadless forest, movement is carried out by azimuth. Phase lines are designated more frequently than on open terrain.

In small woods, the regimental (battalion) column is moved forward after the march security has reached the opposite edge of the woods.

581. During intense cold in the wintertime, long halts are usually not given. When movement is being carried out in vehicles in intense cold, short halts are given every 1 to 1.5 hours of movement. Vehicles carrying personnel are equipped with covers; the floor of the vehicle body is covered with hay, straw, or branches of coniferous trees. When riding in open vehicles, personnel, except for observers, are seated with their backs to the direction of movement; tent sections are used as protection against the wind. At halts, personnel exercise. In the cavalry,

~~SECRET~~

to warm personnel and rest the horses, the men dismount more often and lead their horses.

During movement on skis and on horseback, leading small units are relieved every hour; during movement on foot through areas without roads or on roads covered with snow, they are relieved after every 20 to 30 minutes of movement.

In organizing a march through heavy mud [rasputitsa], special attention must be given to the timely reconnaissance and preparation of routes of march, to measures for caring for horses, to increasing the mobility of transport, and to pulling out vehicles stuck on the road.

Long halts should be given in areas suitable for quartering regimental (battalion) small units. These areas should give personnel a chance to rest, get warm, and dry their clothing, equipment, and footwear. At short and long halts, vehicles and weapons are inspected and the mud cleaned from them; the horses' shoes and hoofs should be inspected.

582. A march in the mountains is organized with consideration of the profile of the route of march.

In computing a foot or cavalry march on mountain roads (paths) having a rising or falling gradient of more than  $10^{\circ}$ , one hour for every 300 meters of ascent or descent is added.

In negotiating ascents or descents, distances between vehicles are increased up to 50 to 100 meters.

In a march over sectors difficult to traverse, tank and artillery units (small units), as a rule, move as independent columns on a common route or on a separate route.

In mountain passes and on narrow roads, only one-way movement takes place, and primarily during daylight hours. In a night movement in dangerous areas, barriers and visual signals are set up.

The control of movement on mountainous sectors of roads is strengthened. In narrow places, at sharp turns, and in passes, additional traffic control posts with telephone communications are set up.

Movement support detachments are sent out, as a rule, on every route of march.

On steep ascents and descents, measures are taken for braking artillery rolling equipment, vehicles, and carts.

In moving up steep ascents in either mounted or dismounted formation, stops of up to 3 minutes are made every 15 to 20 minutes of movement. These are in addition to short halts.

Large halts are designated on suitable lines, before ascents, and at water sources.

During a march in mountains, small units must have equipment and devices for

~~SECRET~~

overcoming mountain streams and steep ascents and descents.

In sectors which do not allow sending out flank march security, stationary flank security is set up. Stationary flank security is established on commanding heights, in mountain passages in valleys, and on roads and paths leading to the route of march.

583. During the organization of a march in deserts and steppes, special attention is paid to antiaircraft defense.

The length of a day's march is usually dependent on the presence of sources of water and supplies of heating fuel /toplivo/ along the route of march, or on the possibility of the establishment of water supply points and the procurement of heating fuel.

Commanders must see to the strict observance of water discipline. In case of necessity, supplies of water for drinking and for technical needs, as well as supplies of heating fuel, are carried along with the troops.

During a march in extreme heat, measures are taken for protecting personnel from heat prostration and sunstroke, as well as measures for protecting horses from sunstroke.

584. Before a march, the following must be provided for: the replenishing of transportable reserves up to the norm, the replenishing of expended materiel at long halts, overnight halts (daytime rests), and one-day halts, and also the method of providing small units with hot food.

In the organization of medical support, the method of evacuation of the wounded and sick to medical installations is planned.

In the organization of veterinary support, the method of evacuating wounded and sick horses to veterinary hospitals is planned.

585. Technical support of combat and transport vehicles on the march and at long halts includes the method of servicing them technically, the delivery of fuel and lubricants, the method of repair and evacuation of disabled vehicles, and the method of directing to the small units those vehicles which have fallen out and have been repaired.

586. The regimental commander and his staff usually advance at the head of the column of the main body; the battalion commander, with his staff, usually advances at the head of the battalion column.

587. Communication on the march is organized with reconnaissance small units, with small units designated for security within the regimental (battalion) column, and with adjacent units. The principal means of communication on the march are radio, mobile means of communication, and visual signals. In the regiment, in addition, liaison officers are sent out. Radios operate on a listening watch /na priyem/, and are used for the transmission of signals according to a prearranged table, if this has not been prohibited by higher headquarters.

For the reception and transmission of visual signals, an observer is designated

~~SECRET~~

for each vehicle.

588. The regimental (battalion) commander, having received an order for movement by rail or water, makes a decision for the organization of the march to the marshaling area and a decision for the movement. In the decision for the movement, the regimental (battalion) commander must provide for:

- the distribution of small units among echelons (railroad cars) or ships, and the sequence of their loading;

- the quartering areas of small units in the marshaling area before loading;

- the tasks connected with the engineer preparation of the marshaling area and of the routes of approach to it and to the loading station (wharf);

- the method of organization of antiaircraft defense, and other measures for the combat support of the regiment;

- the manner of material, technical, and medical support and of the organization of the feeding of small units en route, as well as of the organization of the feeding of horses;

- measures for the preservation of military secrecy.

589. During the organization and planning of the movement of a regiment (battalion) by air, the regimental (battalion) commander, on the basis of the order he has received, must:

- in conjunction with the staff of the large unit (unit) of troop carrier aviation, determine the order of moving the regiment (battalion) and, in accordance with the mission received, make a breakdown of the small units by flight echelons;

- determine marshaling areas and areas of assembly after the landing, and the order and times of concentration of the small units in them;

- outline measures for the antiaircraft defense and camouflage of the small units of the regiment (battalion);

- organize within the small units training in loading in planes (gliders) and in debarking from them, and in loading and unloading arms, combat equipment, transport, and cargo.

~~SECRET~~

### Chapter XIII

#### DISPOSITION OF UNITS AND SMALL UNITS AT A HALT AND THE ORGANIZATION OF SECURITY

590. Depending upon the situation, the regiment (battalion) is disposed at a halt:

- outside inhabited points (in a bivouac) [bivakom];
- in inhabited points (in billets) [po kvartiro];
- in a combination of both (in both billets and bivouac) [kvartiro-bivakom].

The method of disposing a regiment (battalion) in an area allotted to it depends upon the situation and the nature of the terrain.

Outside inhabited points, small units of the regiment (battalion) build huts and dugouts. For protection against air attack, slit trenches are dug for personnel and cover is prepared for vehicles and horses.

In inhabited points, small units are disposed closer to the outskirts; personnel with their weapons are located in houses or other structures; horses are kept in barns or under canopies; and equipment and transport are concealed outside buildings. The guarding of equipment, transport, and buildings occupied by troops is organized.

When disposed in both bivouac and billets, aid stations are located in buildings in first priority.

When the regiment (battalion) is disposed in inhabited points, houses designated for occupation by headquarters and communications centers are cleared of local inhabitants.

Personnel arriving at headquarters in vehicles or on horseback must not disclose its location. Concealed parking areas for vehicles and horses are designated apart from the headquarters.

591. To select a regimental area on the terrain, the staff organizes a timely reconnaissance. In order to distribute the regimental area among the small units, billeting personnel are sent out as follows: from every company (troop, battery), one noncommissioned officer; from every battalion (artillery battalion), one officer; from the regiment, a group of officers of various specialities headed by a staff officer who has participated in the reconnaissance.

In moving to the designated area, billeting personnel are protected by members of a patrol [dozornymi]; and, while working in the area of disposition of the regiment, they are protected by members of a patrol and by separate security posts [otdelnymi storozhevymi postami]. To the senior billeting officer, there is assigned from a squad to a platoon for security. To maintain communications with the regimental commander, the senior billeting officer is furnished with the necessary means of communication.

~~SECRET~~

All work of the billeting personnel is organized and unified by the senior billeting officer who is usually assigned from among the officers of the regimental staff. When a battalion (troop) is disposed separately, work is organized and unified by an officer from the battalion (troop).

The senior billeting officer, having arrived in the area, must do the following:

- allocate the subdivisions of the area to the small units;
- inspect the sanitary and veterinary conditions of the area, determine the presence and quality of water, distribute water sources among small units, and arrange for guarding them;
- select locations for the headquarters, communications centers, and rear service small units.

For the designation of points and places that are unsuitable in the sanitary and veterinary sense, appropriate markers are set up.

592. Upon the approach of the regiment (battalion) to the area of disposition, billeting personnel meet their small units and guide them to the locations assigned for their disposition.

Halting and waiting by small units on roads leading into the areas of disposition are not permitted.

It is forbidden to put inscriptions on houses and fences, to put up markers with an indication of the names of units (small units) or their numbering, or to inscribe the surnames of commanders of units (small units).

593. When the regiment (battalion) is disposed in an area liberated from the enemy, the regimental (battalion) commander preliminarily organizes a careful reconnaissance of the area.

The clearing of individual enemy soldiers and small groups from the area allocated for the disposition of the regiment is carried out by personnel from small units detailed for this purpose.

Mine fields, mined objects, and contaminated sectors which are discovered are marked and guarded. In case of necessity, passages are made on the routes of movement or detours are designated.

Supplies left behind by the enemy are placed under guard, inspected, and not used without permission of the division (regimental) commander.

594. The regiment (battalion), when disposed at a halt, protects itself by means of outpost security /storozhevym okhraneniym/.

Outpost security must be all-around and must cover all roads and approaches leading to the area of the regiment (battalion) which is being secured.

When a tank battalion is disposed separately from its regiment, motorized rifle small units should be attached to it for performing outpost security.

~~SECRET~~

595. For its own protection, a regiment that is disposed separately sends out, on a threatened direction, an outpost /otdelnaya storozhevaya zastava/ up to a company in strength (in a cavalry regiment, up to two platoons), reinforced with artillery, mortars, machine guns, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper small units; on a secondary direction, it sends out outposts up to a platoon each in strength or separate outguards /otdelnyye polevyye karaulы/ of one or two squads each in strength (in the cavalry, a squad each in strength).

A separately disposed battalion sends out on a threatened direction an out post up to a reinforced platoon in strength, and in secondary directions, separate outguards of one to two squads each.

The number of outposts and separate outguards sent out each time is determined by the following:

- the distance from the enemy;
- the time required to deploy the regiment (battalion);
- the importance of the direction being protected;
- the nature of the terrain and observation conditions.

Outposts (separate outguards) are relieved after one to two days.

When disposed deep in the rear of friendly troops, the regiment (battalion) sends out only local security.

596. Depending upon conditions of observation and the nature of the terrain, an outpost line is situated, on the average, at a distance of 4 to 6 km from the troops being protected. It must lie on a line which is suitable for defense, which is covered by antitank obstacles, and which provides good observation toward the enemy.

597. An outpost receives a security zone, a line for defense, and a line up to which it must conduct reconnaissance.

Outposts receive security zones with a frontage as follows: a reinforced company receives a security zone up to 3 km in width; a reinforced platoon (in the cavalry, up to two reinforced platoons) receives a security zone up to 1.5 km in width.

An outpost of company strength conducts reconnaissance in its zone with separate reconnaissance patrols (in the cavalry, with members of a patrol) to a depth of 2 to 3 km.

A separate outguard is sent out to a distance of up to 1.5 km. It is assigned a position for defense and a zone for observation and the conduct of fire.

598. When the regiment (battalion) is disposed at a halt after a march, the march security becomes the outpost security or is replaced by newly designated outpost security.

~~SECRET~~



~~SECRET~~

Upon resumption of movement, the outpost security remains in place until the march security small units have crossed the outpost line; after this, outpost security ceases operations and joins the tail of the column of the main body or its own small units.

599. When units and small units are disposed at a halt, communications are organized with outposts, separate outguards, and small units of the regiment (battalion) and attached units (small units) by the use of wire, radio, and mobile means of communication. Radio is used with the beginning of battle. In addition, communication is established with the outpost security by means of visual signals, for which constant observation from the area in which the regiment (battalion) is disposed is maintained.

600. For local security, the regiment (battalion) sends out separate outguards, separate security posts /otdelnyye storozhevyye posty/ and organizes patrolling by members of a patrol. In addition, an alert small unit is designated.

The commander of an alert small unit conducts a reconnaissance of the area designated to him for defense, and prepares a plan of operations for the alert small unit.

If the alert small unit must for any reason leave the area of disposition, a

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

595. For its own protection, a regiment that is disposed separately sends out, on a threatened direction, an outpost /otdelnaya storozhevaya zastava/ up to a company in strength (in a cavalry regiment, up to two platoons), reinforced with artillery, mortars, machine guns, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper small units; on a secondary direction, it sends out outposts up to a platoon each in strength or separate outguards /otdelnyye polevyye karauly/ of one or two squads each in strength (in the cavalry, a squad each in strength).

A separately disposed battalion sends out on a threatened direction an out post up to a reinforced platoon in strength, and in secondary directions, separate outguards of one to two squads each.

The number of outposts and separate outguards sent out each time is determined by the following:

- the distance from the enemy;
- the time required to deploy the regiment (battalion);
- the importance of the direction being protected;
- the nature of the terrain and observation conditions.

Outposts (separate outguards) are relieved after one to two days.

When disposed deep in the rear of friendly troops, the regiment (battalion) sends out only local security.

596. Depending upon conditions of observation and the nature of the terrain, an outpost line is situated, on the average, at a distance of 4 to 6 km from the troops being protected. It must lie on a line which is suitable for defense, which is covered by antitank obstacles, and which provides good observation toward the enemy.

597. An outpost receives a security zone, a line for defense, and a line up to which it must conduct reconnaissance.

Outposts receive security zones with a frontage as follows: a reinforced company receives a security zone up to 3 km in width; a reinforced platoon (in the cavalry, up to two reinforced platoons) receives a security zone up to 1.5 km in width.

An outpost of company strength conducts reconnaissance in its zone with separate reconnaissance patrols (in the cavalry, with members of a patrol) to a depth of 2 to 3 km.

A separate outguard is sent out to a distance of up to 1.5 km. It is assigned a position for defense and a zone for observation and the conduct of fire.

598. When the regiment (battalion) is disposed at a halt after a march, the march security becomes the outpost security or is replaced by newly designated outpost security.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

~~SECRET~~

Upon resumption of movement, the outpost security remains in place until the march security small units have crossed the outpost line; after this, outpost security ceases operations and joins the tail of the column of the main body or its own small units.

599. When units and small units are disposed at a halt, communications are organized with outposts, separate outguards, and small units of the regiment (battalion) and attached units (small units) by the use of wire, radio, and mobile means of communication. Radio is used with the beginning of battle. In addition, communication is established with the outpost security by means of visual signals, for which constant observation from the area in which the regiment (battalion) is disposed is maintained.

600. For local security, the regiment (battalion) sends out separate outguards, separate security posts *[otdelnyye storozhevyye posty]* and organizes patrolling by members of a patrol. In addition, an alert small unit is designated.

The commander of an alert small unit conducts a reconnaissance of the area designated to him for defense, and prepares a plan of operations for the alert small unit.

If the alert small unit must for any reason leave the area of disposition, a new alert small unit is immediately designated.

601. The area in which the regiment (battalion) is disposed is prepared for all-around antitank defense. The regimental (battalion) commander must:

- establish observation and a warning system;
- dispose antitank weapons in the probable directions of enemy tank movement;
- when necessary, organize the protection of the area of deployment with anti-tank and antipersonnel obstacles;
- indicate to the artillery the likely avenues of enemy tank attack and firing positions for the conduct of direct fire;
- indicate to the tanks and self-propelled artillery the lines of deployment for repelling enemy tank attacks;
- determine the method of operations of the small units when repelling enemy tank attacks.

In addition to this, the regimental commander constitutes an artillery-anti-tank reserve and indicates the area of its disposition.

602. In order to combat enemy aviation, the regimental (battalion) commander organizes an antiaircraft defense of the area of disposition.

He must do the following:

- organize observation and a warning system;
- give missions to the antiaircraft small units relative to covering the area

~~SECRET~~

~~SECRET~~

in which the unit is disposed;

- designate small units and establish the method of conducting fire against low-flying enemy aircraft;

- take measures for the camouflage and protection of personnel, armament, equipment, transport, and horses;

- establish alternate areas in which to dispose the small units.

603. In organizing an antichemical defense, the regimental (battalion) commander must do the following:

- organize chemical observation and a warning system against an enemy chemical attack;

- take measures for the preparation, in the chemical defense sense, of installations and shelters for the headquarters, the aid station, communications centers, and the small units;

- indicate to small units their method of operations in case of an enemy chemical attack and measures to be taken to protect personnel, equipment, transport, and horses from the effects of poisonous substances.

604. The regimental commander, in determining the manner of assembly in case of a combat alert, designates assembly areas for battalions and routes to them.

Assembly areas are assigned for each battalion (troop) in the probable directions of combat operations, usually outside inhabited points and, where possible, in concealed locations.

605. When disposed in immediate proximity to the front, the regimental (battalion) commander establishes communication with the commander of the unit (small unit) who is in contact with the enemy, and constantly keeps abreast of the situation at the front.

When a continuous front does not exist, the regimental (battalion) commander organizes reconnaissance of the enemy in the threatened directions, in order promptly to establish his approach to the area in which the regiment (battalion) is disposed.

606. In a large forest, areas of disposition of small units are designated near roads and no closer than 500 meters from the edge of the woods.

Outpost security must cover all roads, lanes, and approaches leading to the area where the regiment (battalion) is disposed. In the intervals not occupied by the outpost security, separate security posts (*otdelnyye storozhevyye posty*), listening posts (*secrety*), and ambushes are additionally set up. The distance of the outpost security from the area where the regiment (battalion) is disposed is shortened.

607. Under winter conditions, for disposition outside populated points, areas are selected which are protected from winds and provided with fuel. Dugouts are constructed for personnel, and sheds are constructed for horses, equipment, and transport.

~~SECRET~~

Populated points are employed when the situation is favorable. When there is an insufficient number of buildings, these are assigned to small units in such quantity as will permit all units to warm their personnel in turns.

Personnel assigned to outpost security and to local security, and also to reconnaissance, are equipped with skis. Special attention is given to preventing a surprise attack by enemy ski detachments.

608. For disposing his unit at a halt, the regimental (battalion) commander makes a decision, and issues an order in which he indicates the following:

- information about the enemy;
- areas in which the small units are to be disposed;
- method of operations of the small units in case of an enemy surprise attack;
- the composition and missions of outposts (separate outguards), the security zone, the outpost line (positions of the separate outguards), the time at which the outpost security is to be sent out, the line of defense in case of enemy attack, and the line up to which security forces must conduct reconnaissance;
- missions of the outpost security of adjacent units, and boundary lines with them;
- information about reconnaissance units already operating;
- measures for antiaircraft and antitank defense, and other combat security measures;
- assembly areas for the small units upon the sounding of a combat alert, and the order of movement to them;
- the method of organizing local security, the strength and composition of the alert small unit, and its mission;
- special measures for insuring combat readiness and maintaining order and safety in the areas of disposition.

In addition, the password and countersign are given to the commanders of outposts (separate outguards), and instructions are given them as to communications, the time for rendering periodic reports, and the method of passing friendly reconnaissance through the outpost security zone.

609. When a regiment is disposed at a halt as part of a division, the rifle (motorized rifle) battalion (in the cavalry, one or two reinforced troops) may be assigned as an outpost detachment [storozhevoy otryad].

610. The battalion assigned as the outpost detachment may be reinforced with one or two battalions of artillery, one or two batteries of antitank artillery, and one or two companies of tanks or batteries of self-propelled artillery, and by sapper small units equipped with obstacle-making equipment.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

The outpost detachment organizes outpost security in a zone up to 5 km wide, and conducts reconnaissance to a depth of 8 to 10 km.

611. The commander of the battalion which is assigned as the outpost detachment organizes his own observation post in the most threatened direction and in a place from which he can see the dispositions of the battalion and the enemy approaches.

The battalion commander maintains communications with the outposts and the separate outguards by radio, mobile means of communication, and visual signals.

612. The outpost detachment occupies the designated security zone with outposts and separate outguards, covering the likely directions of enemy attack. In order to repel an enemy attack, the outpost detachment prepares for defense the line assigned to it.

Outposts are assigned security zones with the following widths: for a reinforced company, up to 3 km; for a reinforced platoon, up to 1.5 km.

In important directions, outposts are sent out in strength up to a reinforced company; in secondary directions, outposts in strength of a reinforced platoon and separate outguards are posted.

Small units designated as outposts are reinforced with heavy machine guns, heavy grenade throwers, mortars, antitank artillery, self-propelled artillery, tanks, sapper small units, and a part of the artillery attached to the outpost detachment, and are supported by means of communication.

An outpost in strength up to a reinforced company prepares for defense, on the important direction in its zone of security, an area up to 1000 meters wide and 400 to 600 meters deep, sending out outguards to the front and flanks.

An outpost in company strength conducts reconnaissance in its zone, by means of separate reconnaissance patrols, to a depth of 2 to 3 km.

An outpost in reinforced platoon strength prepares for defense, in its zone of security, a position up to 500 meters wide, sending to the front and flanks one or two outguards or separate security posts otdelnyye storozhevye posty. Observers are designated to watch for their signals.

A separate outguard prepares a position for defense and conducts observation in the zone assigned to it.

The defense areas (positions) of the outposts and separate outguards are prepared with emplacements and, when machinery is available, with trenches, and are protected by obstacles. The intervals between the outposts and outguards are covered by fire and obstacles, and continuous patrolling by members of a patrol is established, especially at night.

The entire security zone of the outpost detachment is covered by the fire of mortars, artillery, and machine guns. Special attention is given to the organization of antitank defense.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

Artillery, tanks, and self-propelled artillery occupy firing positions ahead of time, remaining in constant readiness to open fire.

An outpost detachment reserve is created with a strength of one or two rifle platoons, small units of heavy machine guns, antitank artillery, tanks, self-propelled artillery, and sapper small units; it is usually located 1 to 2 km behind the line of outposts in the most likely direction of enemy actions, in readiness to support the battle of the outposts and the separate outguards.

Artillery remaining under the direct control of the commander of the outpost detachment receives missions for the support of the outposts and the separate outguards.

613. The commander of the battalion which is assigned as the outpost detachment, after the receipt of a mission, clarifies it, evaluates the situation, conducts a reconnaissance, and makes his decision, after which he issues a combat order, in which are indicated the following:

- landmarks;
- information on the enemy;
- the mission of the outpost detachment and his own decision;
- the missions of adjacent outpost security and boundary lines with it;
- the missions of the small units assigned as outposts and separate outguards, the small units attached to them, zones of security, and the time at which to send out the outpost security;
- the line of defense in the event of enemy attack, and the line to which the security forces must conduct reconnaissance; also information regarding reconnaissance already sent out;
- the mission of the detachment's reserve;
- the missions of the artillery and mortars which remain under the control of the battalion commander;
- measures for antiaircraft and antitank defense, and other security measures;
- the location of the observation post;
- times and means of rendering combat reports.

Moreover, the battalion commander communicates the password and countersign, and issues instructions regarding communications and the manner of passing friendly reconnaissance through the zone of the outpost security.

614. With the receipt of the first information on the enemy, or on the order of a senior officer, the outpost detachment occupies the prepared defense line and makes ready to repel the enemy. The commander of the outpost detachment immediately

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

reports to the division commander about the appearance of the enemy, and notifies adjacent outpost detachments (outposts).

During the enemy attack, the outpost detachment defends the line occupied, ensuring the deployment of the forces being secured.

The withdrawal of the outpost detachment takes place only on the order of the division commander.

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
Chapter I. General Principles . . . . .	3
Chapter II. Command of Regiment and Battalion . . . . .	10
Chapter III. Political Work under Combat Conditions . . . . .	24
1. General Principles . . . . .	24
2. Political Work under Various Conditions of Combat of a Regiment (Battalion) . . . . .	26
Chapter IV. Combat Security . . . . .	31
1. Reconnaissance . . . . .	31
2. Security . . . . .	39
3. Antitank Defense . . . . .	39
4. Antiaircraft Defense . . . . .	40
5. Antichemical Protection . . . . .	40
6. Security of Boundaries and Flanks . . . . .	41
7. Concealment . . . . .	42
8. Measures for Defense against Radio Interference . . . . .	43
Chapter V. The Organization and Operation of the Regimental (Battalion) Rear . . . . .	44
Chapter VI. Offensive Combat . . . . .	59
1. General Principles . . . . .	59
2. Organization of Offensive Combat . . . . .	63
3. Conduct of Offensive Combat . . . . .	73
4. Operations of a Forward Battalion . . . . .	86
5. Attack at Night . . . . .	88
6. Peculiarities of Attack of Mechanized and Tank Regiments . .	90
7. Peculiarities of Attack of a Cavalry Regiment . . . . .	95
8. Conduct of a Meeting Engagement with Deployment from the March . . . . .	102
9. Surmounting the Enemy's Security Zone . . . . .	108

~~SECRET~~

	Page
10. Peculiarities of an Attack on an Enemy who has Hurriedly Taken up the Defense . . . . .	109
11. Breakthrough of a Fortified Area . . . . .	110
12. Offensive Combat in a City . . . . .	116
13. Forcing a River . . . . .	119
14. Joint Regimental (Battalion) Offensive Operations with Units (Ships) of the Navy . . . . .	125
15. Peculiarities of Attack in Forests . . . . .	130
16. Peculiarities of Attack in Winter . . . . .	133
17. Peculiarities of Attack in Mountainous-Wooded Terrain. . . .	136
18. Peculiarities of Attack in Deserts and Steppes . . . . .	139
Chapter VII. Pursuit . . . . .	143
Chapter VIII. Defense . . . . .	145
1. General Principles . . . . .	145
2. The Organization of Defense . . . . .	152
3. The Conduct of Defensive Combat . . . . .	173
4. Defense of the Regiment (Battalion) of the Second Echelon. .	176
5. Defense at Night. . . . .	178
6. Peculiarities of Defense on a Wide Front . . . . .	180
7. Peculiarities of Defense in the Security Zone . . . . .	182
8. Peculiarities of the Organization of Defense by Mechanized and Tank Regiments . . . . .	186
9. Peculiarities of the Organization of Defense by a Cavalry Regiment . . . . .	188
10. Defense in a City . . . . .	193
11. Defense of a River . . . . .	196
12. Defense of a Seacoast . . . . .	200
13. Peculiarities of Defense in a Forest . . . . .	201
14. Peculiarities of Defense in Winter . . . . .	203
15. Peculiarities of Defense in Mountainous-Wooded Terrain. . . .	205
16. Peculiarities of Defense in Deserts and Steppes . . . . .	208

~~SECRET~~

		Page
Chapter	IX. Disengagement and Withdrawal . . . . .	210
Chapter	X. Combat in Encirclement and Escape from Encirclement . . . . .	215
Chapter	XI. Relief of Units and Small Units . . . . .	220
Chapter	XII. The Movement of Units and Small Units . . . . .	225
Chapter	XIII. Disposition of Units and Small Units at a Halt and the Organization of Security . . . . .	239

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~

Under the supervision of Major General Yesaulov, P. G.  
and Lieutenant Colonel Zlatoverov, B. C.

---

Publ. No. 2/3343s      Sent to press on 11 April 1953      Order No. 231  
Format of paper 70 x 921/32-7 paper norms = 16.38 printer's norms

---

~~S-E-C-R-E-T~~